

AI-generated. These interlinears were produced by a large language model (Claude). Each chapter is structurally validated and self-reviewed, but the Greek text, parsing, syntactic, semantic-force, and lexical analysis are *not* human-verified — useful for study and orientation, not a substitute for a critical edition, lexicon, or commentary.

GREEK TEXT · TRANSLATION · INTERLINEAR · DISCOURSE STRUCTURE

The Third Book of Kingdoms, Chapter 2

ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΩΝ Γ' Β'

Each verse opens with the running Greek, an English translation, and a **discourse note** (its connective, relation, and role in the argument). Below follows the word-by-word breakdown in six tiers: gloss, case (color), parsing, *syntax*, **semantic force**, and a **lexical note**.

CASE ■ Nominative ■ Genitive ■ Dative ■ Accusative ■ Vocative ■ Verb (no case) ■ Indeclinable

Discourse notes head each verse: **relation** · connective · clause-flow. Indentation marks prominence — flush-left = main line of argument; indented = supporting / subordinate material.

Theme

David charges Solomon, who secures the kingdom by judging Adonijah, Abiathar, Joab, and Shimei.

Translation & textual notes

The Greek text of 3 Kingdoms (1 Kings) 2 follows the Rahlfs–Hanhart critical edition of the Septuagint (Septuaginta, rev. ed. 2006), an ancient and public-domain text; the critical apparatus is not reproduced. 3 Kingdoms is the LXX's designation for the book English Bibles call 1 Kings (ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΩΝ Γ', 'Of Kingdoms, the Third'). Chapter 2 narrates David's deathbed charge to Solomon (vv. 1–9), David's death and the consolidation of Solomon's reign (vv. 10–12), and Solomon's systematic removal of his rivals: Adonijah, executed after seeking Abishag the Shunammite as wife (vv. 13–25); Abiathar the priest, deposed to Anathoth (vv. 26–27); Joab, slain at the horns of the altar by Benaiah son of Jehoiada (vv. 28–34); and

Shimei son of Gera, confined to Jerusalem and later executed for crossing the Kidron (vv. 36–46). The chapter's most distinctive LXX feature is the so-called 'MISCELLANIES' — two long blocks of supplementary material with no equivalent in the Hebrew Masoretic Text, traditionally lettered 2:35a–o and 2:46a–l. In the present edition these pluses are run together within the long verses 35 and 46 (the source's editorial sub-letter markers, originally inserted as inline tags before each lettered unit, have been removed and are not annotated as words). The first miscellany (35a–o) gathers notices of Solomon's God-given wisdom 'as the sand by the sea,' his marriage to Pharaoh's daughter, his building of the temple, the walls of Jerusalem, the Millo (ἄκρᾱ), and store-cities, his corvée labor of seventy thousand burden-bearers and eighty thousand quarrymen, his bronze sea and temple furnishings, and a doublet of David's charge concerning Shimei. The second miscellany (46a–l) summarizes Solomon's surpassing wisdom, the peace and prosperity of his realm where Judah and Israel dwelt secure 'each under his vine and his fig tree from Dan to Beersheba,' his lavish daily provisions, the roster of his chief officers, his forty thousand chariot-horses, and his dominion over all the kingdoms 'from the River to the border of Egypt!' This material the MT distributes across 1 Kings 3–5 and 9–10, so that 3 Kingdoms stands as a primary witness to a Hebrew Vorlage and an editorial arrangement differing markedly from the MT. Throughout the chapter κύριος renders the Tetragrammaton; David's charge employs the deuteronomistic idiom φυλάξεις τὴν φυλακὴν κυρίου ('you shall keep the charge of the LORD,' v. 3) and the dynastic-promise formula οὐκ ἐξολεθρευθήσεται σοι ἀνὴρ ('a man shall not be cut off from you,' v. 4).

A · 2:1–4

David's charge to Solomon: keep the law of Moses

As his days draw near to die (v. 1), David charges Solomon first to covenant fidelity: 'be strong and become a man' (v. 2), keep the charge of the LORD (φυλάξεις τὴν φυλακὴν κυρίου) by walking in his ways and observing the commandments written in the law of Moses (v. 3), so that YHWH may establish (στήσει) his dynastic word — that David will never lack a man on the throne of Israel if his sons walk before God in truth (v. 4). The charge frames the whole chapter's politics under deuteronomistic theology.

B · 2:5–9

David's charge concerning Joab, Barzillai's sons, and Shimei

David turns to specific scores to settle: deal wisely with Joab son of Zeruiah, who shed the blood of war in peace (Abner and Amasa), and do not let his gray head go down to Hades in peace (vv. 5–6); show covenant kindness (ἔλεος) to the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite who succored David in his flight from Absalom (v. 7); and though David swore by the LORD not to kill Shimei son of Gera, who cursed him at Bahurim, Solomon — a wise man — is to bring his gray head down to Hades in blood (vv. 8–9).

C · 2:10–12

David's death and the establishment of Solomon's reign

David sleeps with his fathers and is buried in the city of David (v. 10); a regnal summary records forty years' reign — seven in Hebron, thirty-three in Jerusalem (v. 11). Solomon sits on the throne of David his father, and his kingdom is firmly established (ἡτοιμάσθη ἡ βασιλεία αὐτοῦ σφόδρα, v. 12), a refrain that closes the chapter (v. 46).

D · 2:13–25

Adonijah's request for Abishag and his execution

Adonijah comes to Bathsheba and, through her, asks Solomon for Abishag the Shunammite as wife (vv. 13–21). Solomon reads the request as a renewed bid for the kingdom (v. 22), swears by the LORD that Adonijah has spoken against his own life (vv. 23–24), and dispatches Benaiah son of Jehoiada, who strikes him down (v. 25).

E · 2:26–27

Abiathar deposed to Anathoth

Solomon banishes Abiathar the priest to his field at Anathoth, sparing his life because he bore the ark before David and shared his afflictions (v. 26); thereby Solomon removes him from the priesthood of the LORD, fulfilling the word spoken against the house of Eli at Shiloh (v. 27).

F · 2:28–35

Joab slain at the altar; Benaiah and Zadok installed; the first miscellany

Hearing the news, Joab — who sided with Adonijah — flees to the tent of the LORD and seizes the horns of the altar (v. 28). Solomon sends Benaiah, who, when Joab refuses to come out, is ordered to kill him there, so that the innocent blood Joab shed (Abner, Amasa) returns on his own head while David's house has peace forever (vv. 29–33). Benaiah strikes Joab down and he is buried at his house in the wilderness (v. 34). The king sets Benaiah over the army and Zadok as chief priest in Abiathar's place (v. 35), after which the long first miscellany (35a–o) gathers notices of Solomon's wisdom and building works.

Shimei confined and executed; the kingdom established; the second miscellany

Solomon confines Shimei to Jerusalem on pain of death should he cross the Kidron (vv. 36–38). After three years Shimei pursues runaway slaves to Gath and returns (vv. 39–40); Solomon confronts him for breaking the oath of the LORD (vv. 41–44), pronounces blessing on his own throne (v. 45), and has Benaiah strike Shimei down (v. 46). The closing notice 'the kingdom was established in the hand of Solomon' introduces the long second miscellany (46a–l) on Solomon's prosperity and dominion.

1 καὶ ἤγγισαν αἱ ἡμέραι Δαυιδ ἀποθανεῖν αὐτόν καὶ ἐνετείλατο τῷ Σαλωμων υἱῷ αὐτοῦ λέγων

And the days of David drew near for him to die, and he gave a charge to Solomon his son, saying:

Narrative opening (death-bed scene, continuing from ch. 1) καὶ ἤγγισαν

The chapter opens with the deuteronomistic death-notice formula 'the days of X drew near to die' (cf. Gen 47:29 of Jacob; Deut 31:14 of Moses), framing David's charge as a patriarchal last testament. The Hebraizing articular-infinitive-with-accusative-subject construction ἀποθανεῖν αὐτόν renders Hebrew תָּמוּל.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (Hebraizing καί-parataxis)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἤγγισαν

drew near

Aor Act Indic 3 Pl · ἐγγίζω

main verb

→ constative aorist (settled fact of approaching death)

ἐγγίζω: 'draw near / approach'; renders בָּרַךְ; the idiom 'the days drew near to die' is a deuteronomistic death-notice formula (cf. Gen 47:29; Deut 31:14), casting David's words as a patriarchal testament.

αἱ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

αἱ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέραι

days

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

ἡμέρα: 'day'; the plural αἱ ἡμέραι ('the days') as a periphrasis for the span of one's life is a Hebraism (יָמַי), here the close of David's lifetime.

Δαυιδ

of David

genitive of relationship (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: transliteration of Hebrew דָּוִד; indeclinable in the LXX; here functioning as a genitive ('the days of David').

ἀποθανεῖν

to die

Aor Act Inf · ἀποθνήσκω

epexegetical infinitive (with accusative subject αὐτόν)

→ constative aorist

ἀποθνήσκω: 'die'; the articular-infinitive-with-accusative-subject construction ἀποθανεῖν αὐτόν ('for him to die') is a Hebraism rendering תּוֹמָז, specifying the purpose/content of the drawing-near.

αὐτόν

he / him

Accusative

accusative subject of the infinitive ἀποθανεῖν

→ participant reference

αὐτός: the accusative αὐτόν is the subject of the infinitive (accusative-and-infinitive), a Hebraizing redundancy with the implicit subject of ἡγγισαν.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐνετείλατο

he charged / commanded

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · ἐντέλλομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist (decisive testamentary act)

ἐντέλλομαι: 'command / charge / enjoin'; renders תְּצַו; the deponent middle is standard; the verb introduces the formal deathbed charge (διαθήκη) that structures vv. 2–9.

τῷ

to

Dative

article (with Σαλωμων, dative recipient)

→ noun-phrase marking

The dative article τῷ governs the indeclinable Σαλωμων, marking it as the dative recipient of the charge.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

dative recipient (indeclinable proper noun, case shown by article τῷ)

→ noun-phrase marking

Σαλωμων: transliteration of Hebrew שְׁלֹמֹן; treated as indeclinable in this passage, its case marked by the accompanying article (here dative τῷ).

υἱῷ

son

Dative

dative in apposition to Σαλωμων

→ sphere or reference

υἱός: 'son'; in apposition to Solomon, stressing the dynastic father-to-son transmission of the charge.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing, Hebraism)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: the participle λέγων ('saying') introducing direct speech is a Hebraism calquing רַמַּז, ubiquitous in LXX narrative.

2 ἐγὼ εἰμι πορεύομαι ἐν ὁδῷ πάσης τῆς γῆς καὶ ἰσχύσεις καὶ ἔσῃ εἰς ἄνδρα

I am going in the way of all the earth; so be strong and become a man.

Direct speech: David's exordium (the dying man's self-announcement)

ἐγὼ εἰμι πορεύομαι

David opens his charge with the euphemism for death 'I am going in the way of all the earth' (cf. Josh 23:14). The emphatic ἐγὼ and the periphrastic-looking ἐγὼ εἰμι πορεύομαι ('I myself am going') give solemn weight; the futures ἰσχύσεις ... ἔσῃ are imperatival/predictive ('be strong ... become'), echoing the encouragement-formula given to Joshua (Deut 31:23).

ἐγὼ

I

Nominative

subject (emphatic personal pronoun)

→ participant reference

ἐγὼ: the emphatic first-person pronoun lends solemnity to David's self-announcement of his impending death.

εἰμι

am

Pres Act Indic 1 Sg · εἰμί

copula / existential (with following πορεύομαι, emphatic)

→ stative present (divine self-attestation)

εἰμί: here the juxtaposition ἐγὼ εἰμι πορεύομαι ('I am — I am going') reflects the Hebrew הִנֵּה אֲנִי הֹלֵךְ ('behold, I am going'), an emphatic Hebraism for the dying man's announcement.

πορεύομαι

am going

Pres Mid Indic 1 Sg · πορεύομαι

main verb (futuristic/processive present)

→ futuristic present (imminent death viewed as journey already underway)

πορεύομαι: 'go / journey / travel'; renders הֹלֵךְ; the euphemism 'I am going in the way of all the earth' (cf. Josh 23:14) names death as the universal road every mortal must walk.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative/manner)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative/manner).

ὁδῷ

way

Dative

dative of place (the 'way')

→ sphere or reference

ὁδός: 'way / road / journey'; renders הֹלֵךְ; 'the way of all the earth' is a standard biblical euphemism for death (cf. Josh 23:14).

πάσης

all

Genitive

attributive adjective (modifying γῆς)

→ relational specification

πάς: 'all / every'; here genitive πάσης modifying γῆς in the merism 'all the earth' = all mortals.

τῆς

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

γῆς

earth

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with ὁδῷ: 'way of the earth')

→ relational specification

γῆ: 'earth / land'; renders γῆ; 'the way of all the earth' denotes the common lot of mortality.

καὶ

and / so

coordinate conjunction (consecutive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἰσχύσεις

you shall be strong

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · ἰσχύω

main verb (imperative future)

→ imperative future (exhortation: 'be strong!')

ἰσχύω: 'be strong / prevail / have power'; renders רָצַח ; the future with imperatival force echoes the encouragement-charge $\text{יְהִי לְךָ רִצְחָן}$ given to Joshua (Deut 31:23; Josh 1:6).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔσῃ

you shall be / become

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · εἰμί

main verb (imperative future, with εἰς + accusative predicate)

→ imperative future ('become a man!')

εἰμί (fut.): the idiom ἔσῃ εἰς ἄνδρα ('be for a man / become a man') uses εἰς + accusative as a predicate complement, a Hebraism rendering לֵךְ בְּרִצְחָן ; the exhortation calls Solomon to mature manhood and royal resolve.

εἰς

into / for

preposition + accusative (predicate complement, Hebraism)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: with ἔσῃ forms the Hebraizing predicate 'become a man' ($\text{יְהִי לְךָ רִצְחָן}$).

ἄνδρα

a man

Accusative

accusative predicate complement (with εἰς)

→ object specification

ἄνθρωπος: 'man / husband / warrior'; renders אִישׁ ; here connoting mature, courageous manhood befitting a king.

3 καὶ φυλάξεις τὴν φυλακὴν κυρίου τοῦ θεοῦ σου τοῦ πορεύεσθαι ἐν ταῖς ὁδοῖς αὐτοῦ φυλάσσειν τὰς ἐντολὰς αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ δικαιώματα καὶ τὰ κρίματα τὰ γεγραμμένα ἐν νόμῳ Μωυσέως ἵνα συνίης ἃ ποιήσεις κατὰ πάντα ὅσα ἂν ἐντείλωμαί σοι

And you shall keep the charge of the LORD your God, to walk in his ways, to keep his commandments and the ordinances and the judgments that are written in the law of Moses, that you may understand what you shall do in all things, whatever I command you;

Direct speech: the central religious charge (deuteronomistic core)

καὶ φυλάξεις

The heart of David's testament is cast in dense deuteronomistic language: the cognate figure φυλάξεις τὴν φυλακὴν ('keep the keeping/charge'), the threefold object 'commandments, ordinances, judgments' (ἐντολὰς ... δικαιώματα ... κρίματα), and the appeal to 'the law of Moses' (νόμῳ Μωυσέως). Two anarthrous-genitive infinitives (τοῦ πορεύεσθαι ... φυλάσσειν) specify the content of covenant-keeping, and the ἵνα-clause states its goal: success (συνίης, 'that you may prosper/understand') in all Solomon undertakes.

καὶ

and

narrative/coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

φυλάξεις

you shall keep

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · φυλάσσω

main verb (imperative future)

→ imperative future (covenant injunction)

φυλάσσω: 'guard / keep / observe'; renders רָמַשׁ; with its cognate object φυλακὴν forms the deuteronomistic idiom רָמַשׁ תְּרַמֹּשׁהּ ('keep the charge of'), the technical term for covenant fidelity to YHWH (cf. Deut 11:1; Lev 18:30).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

φυλακὴν

charge / keeping

Accusative

cognate accusative (direct object of φυλάξεις)

→ object specification

φυλακὴ: 'guard / watch / charge / obligation'; renders תְּרַמֹּשׁהּ; the cognate accusative with φυλάξεις ('keep the keeping') is a Hebraism denoting the whole body of covenant duty owed to YHWH.

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive (objective/possessive: the charge owed to the LORD)

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; the genitive marks YHWH as the one to whom the 'charge' is owed.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (in apposition to κυρίου)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θεοῦ

God

Genitive

genitive in apposition to κυρίου

→ relational specification

θεός: 'God'; renders יהוה; the full title κυρίου τοῦ θεοῦ σου ('the LORD your God') is the standard deuteronomistic covenant designation.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of relationship (possessive pronoun)

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship (possessive pronoun).

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (genitive, governing articular infinitive πορεύεσθαι)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πορεύεσθαι

to walk

Pres Mid Inf · πορεύομαι

articular infinitive of purpose/exegesis (τοῦ + inf.)

→ verbal action or state

πορεύομαι: the genitive articular infinitive τοῦ πορεύεσθαι ('to walk') exegetically defines the 'charge'; 'walking in YHWH's ways' (יְהוָה בְּדַרְכָּיו) is the deuteronomistic metaphor for obedient life.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

ταῖς

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ταῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ὁδοῖς

ways

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

ὁδός: 'way / path'; the plural 'his ways' (דְּרֹכָיו) denotes YHWH's commanded manner of life.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

φυλάσσειν

to keep

Pres Act Inf · φυλάσσω

exegetical infinitive (parallel to τοῦ πορεύεσθαι)

→ present infinitive (ongoing observance)

φυλάσσω: the second exegetical infinitive (here anarthrous) restates the charge as keeping the specific legal categories that follow; the present aspect denotes ongoing observance.

τάς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τάς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐντολὰς

commandments

Accusative

direct object of φυλάσσειν (first of three legal terms)

→ object specification

ἐντολή: 'commandment / precept'; renders תּוֹרָה; first member of the deuteronomistic triad
commandments/ordinances/judgments
summarizing the whole Torah.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὰ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δικαιώματα

ordinances

Accusative

direct object (second legal term)

→ object specification

δικαίωμα: 'ordinance / statute / requirement'; renders דִּקְדּוּק / הַחֲזָקָה; second member of the legal triad, denoting binding decrees.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὰ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κρίματα

judgments

Accusative

direct object (third legal term)

→ object specification

κρίμα: 'judgment / legal decision / ordinance'; renders דִּקְדּוּק; third member of the triad, denoting case-law and judicial rulings.

τὰ

the (things)

Accusative

article (with attributive participle γεγραμμένα)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

γεγραμμένα

written

Perf Pass Part Acc Neut Pl · γράφω

attributive participle (modifying the legal triad)

→ resultative perfect (standing written authority)

γράφω: 'write'; the perfect passive participle τὰ γεγραμμένα ('the things written / that stand written') points to the fixed, authoritative written Torah; the perfect stresses abiding validity.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

νόμῳ

law

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

νόμος: 'law'; renders תּוֹרָה; 'the law of Moses' (תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה) is the deuteronomistic title for the Mosaic legislation as the binding norm for the king (cf. Deut 17:18–20).

Μωυσέως

of Moses

Genitive

genitive of authorship/relationship

→ relational specification

Μωυσῆς: transliteration of מֹשֶׁה; declined as a noun in the LXX (gen. Μωυσέως); 'the law of Moses' grounds royal duty in covenant Torah.

ἵνα

that / so that

conjunction (purpose/result, introducing subjunctive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἵνα: introduces the purpose clause stating the goal of obedience — Solomon's understanding and success.

συνίης

you may understand / prosper

Pres Act Subj 2 Sg · συνίημι

verb of purpose clause (subjunctive with ἵνα)

→ verbal action or state

συνίημι: 'understand / perceive / act wisely'; renders Hebrew כָּזַב ('act prudently / prosper'); the verb carries both 'understand' and the resultant 'succeed', the deuteronomistic promise of success through obedience (cf. Josh 1:7–8).

ἃ

what (things)

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ποιήσεις)

→ participant reference

ὅς: relative pronoun; neuter plural ἃ ('the things which') as object of ποιήσεις.

ποιήσεις

you shall do

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · ποιέω

verb of relative clause

→ predictive future (the future course of Solomon's actions)

ποιέω: 'do / make'; the future denotes whatever Solomon will undertake — all of which obedience to Torah will render prosperous.

κατά

according to / in

preposition + accusative (distributive: 'in all things')

→ spatial or relational framing

κατά + accusative: 'according to / throughout'; κατά πάντα ('in all things / everything') is a distributive Hebraism.

πάντα

all things

Accusative

accusative object of κατά

→ object specification

πᾶς: 'all / everything'; κατά πάντα ὅσα ('in everything whatsoever') universalizes the scope of the charge.

ὅσα

whatever

Accusative

relative/correlative pronoun (object of ἐντείλωμαι)

→ participant reference

ὅσος: 'as much/many as / whatever'; the indefinite relative generalizes: everything David commands.

ἄν

[whatever]

modal particle (with subjunctive in indefinite relative clause)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἄν: modal particle marking the relative clause as indefinite/general ('whatever I may command').

ἐντείλωμαί

I may command

Aor Mid Subj 1 Sg · ἐντέλλομαι

verb of indefinite relative clause (subjunctive with ἄν)

→ aorist subjunctive (whatever command the LORD gives)

ἐντέλλομαι: 'command / charge'; the same verb used of David's charging in v. 1, here in the subjunctive of the indefinite relative clause.

σοι

you

Dative

dative indirect object (recipient of the command)

→ participant reference or interest

σοι: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object (recipient of the command).

4 ἵνα στήσῃ κύριος τὸν λόγον αὐτοῦ ὃν ἐλάλησεν λέγων ἐὰν φυλάξωσιν οἱ υἱοὶ σου τὴν ὁδὸν αὐτῶν πορεύεσθαι ἐνώπιον ἐμοῦ ἐν ἀληθείᾳ ἐν ὅλῃ καρδίᾳ αὐτῶν καὶ ἐν ὅλῃ ψυχῇ αὐτῶν λέγων οὐκ ἐξολεθρευθήσεται σοι ἀνὴρ ἐπάνωθεν θρόνου Ἰσραὴλ

that the LORD may establish his word that he spoke, saying, 'If your sons keep their way, to walk before me in truth with all their heart and with all their soul,' saying, 'There shall not be cut off from you a man from upon the throne of Israel.'

Direct speech: the dynastic-promise rationale (purpose of obedience) ἵνα στήσῃ κύριος

A second ἵνα-clause grounds the charge in the Davidic dynastic promise (2 Sam 7): obedience secures YHWH's establishing (στήσῃ) of his word. The conditional ἐάν-clause ('if your sons keep their way') states the human condition; the apodosis is the never-failing-heir formula οὐκ ἐξολεθρευθήσεται σοι ἀνὴρ ('a man shall not be cut off from you'). The doubled λέγων (introducing both protasis and apodosis as quoted divine speech) is a Hebraizing layering of direct discourse.

ἵνα

that / so that

conjunction (purpose, introducing subjunctive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἵνα: a second purpose clause, now grounding obedience in the dynastic promise.

στήσῃ

may establish / confirm

Aor Act Subj 3 Sg · ἵστημι

verb of purpose clause (subjunctive with ἵνα)

→ ingressive aorist subjunctive (establish / constitute)

ἵστημι (trans. aor.): 'set up / establish / confirm'; renders יָקַם; 'establish the word' (בְּרֵךְ יָקַם) is covenant-confirmation language drawn from the Davidic promise (2 Sam 7:25).

κύριος

LORD

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; YHWH is the agent who confirms the dynastic word.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

λόγον

word

Accusative

direct object of στήση

→ object specification

λόγος: 'word / promise / saying'; renders רַב־דָּ; here YHWH's dynastic promise to David.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ὃν

which

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ἐλάλησεν)

→ participant reference

ὃς: relative pronoun, acc. masc. sg., referring back to λόγον.

ἐλάλησεν

he spoke

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λαλέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist (the past dynastic oracle)

λαλέω: 'speak'; refers to YHWH's prior word of promise to David (2 Sam 7).

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing, Hebraism)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: the participle λέγων introducing the quoted divine condition, calquing לֵאמֹר.

ἐάν

if

conditional conjunction (introducing subjunctive protasis)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἐάν: 'if'; introduces the conditional protasis with subjunctive, stating the human condition of the dynastic promise.

φυλάξωσιν

they keep

Aor Act Subj 3 Pl · φυλάσσω

verb of conditional protasis (subjunctive with ἐάν)

→ verbal action or state

φυλάσσω: 'keep / guard'; the same covenant-keeping verb as in v. 3, now of Solomon's descendants keeping 'their way'.

οἱ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

οἱ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

υἱοί

sons

Nominative

subject of φυλάξωσιν

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; 'your sons' = the Davidic descendants whose obedience conditions the dynasty's continuance.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ὁδὸν

way

Accusative

direct object of φυλάξωσιν

→ object specification

ὁδός: 'way / conduct of life'; 'keep their way' = maintain faithful conduct before YHWH.

αὐτῶν

their

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτῶν: meaning 'their'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

πορεύεσθαι

to walk

Pres Mid Inf · πορεύομαι

exegetical infinitive (explaining 'keep their way')

→ verbal action or state

πορεύομαι: the infinitive exegetically defines 'keeping their way' as 'walking before me in truth.'

ἐνώπιον

before

preposition + genitive (Hebraism: 'in the presence of')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐνώπιον: 'before / in the sight of'; Hebraism rendering יְהוָה; 'walking before YHWH' is covenant-loyalty language.

ἐμοῦ

me

Genitive

genitive object of ἐνώπιον (YHWH speaking)

→ relational specification

ἐγώ: emphatic first-person genitive; the speaker shifts to YHWH's own voice within the quoted promise.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (manner)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (manner).

ἀληθεία

truth

Dative

dative of manner (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

ἀληθεία: 'truth / faithfulness'; renders תְּהִלָּה; 'in truth' = with covenant sincerity and fidelity.

ἐν

with

preposition + dative (manner)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'with'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (manner).

ὅλη

whole / all

Dative

attributive adjective (modifying καρδία)

→ sphere or reference

ὅλος: 'whole / entire'; 'with all their heart' (בְּכָל לֵבָב) is the Shema's deuteronomistic total-devotion formula (Deut 6:5).

καρδία

heart

Dative

dative of manner

→ sphere or reference

καρδία: 'heart'; renders לֵבָב; the inner seat of will and devotion.

αὐτῶν

their

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτῶν: meaning 'their'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐν

with

preposition + dative (manner)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'with'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (manner).

ὅλη

whole / all

Dative

attributive adjective (modifying ψυχῇ)

→ sphere or reference

ὅλος: paired with καρδία in the Shema-formula 'with all their heart and with all their soul.'

ψυχῇ

soul

Dative

dative of manner

→ sphere or reference

ψυχῇ: 'soul / life / self'; renders שׁוּׁל; the second member of the total-devotion pair (Deut 6:5).

αὐτῶν

their

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτῶν: meaning 'their'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (re-introducing the apodosis as quoted speech)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: the second λέγων layers a further level of direct discourse, introducing the apodosis (the never-failing-heir promise); the doubling is a Hebraism.

οὐκ

not

negative particle (with future indicative)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: emphatic negation of the future, forming the promise 'there shall not be cut off.'

ἐξολεθρευθήσεται

shall be cut off

Fut Pass Indic 3 Sg · ἐξολεθρεύω

main verb of apodosis (negated future)

→ predictive future (dynastic guarantee, negated)

ἐξολεθρεύω: 'utterly destroy / cut off / extirpate'; renders נִיפָל (Niphal); the negated passive forms the dynastic guarantee οὐκ ἐξολεθρευθήσεται σοι ἀνὴρ ('a man shall never be cut off from you'), echoing 2 Sam 7:12–16; cf. the parallel promise at 8:25; 9:5.

σοι

from you / to you

Dative

dative of disadvantage/reference ('from you')

→ participant reference or interest

σοι: ethical/reference dative; 'there shall not be cut off, with respect to you, a man' = you will never lack a descendant on the throne.

ἀνὴρ

a man

Nominative

subject of ἐξολεθρευθήσεται

→ participant prominence

ἀνὴρ: 'man'; here 'a man (heir)' to occupy the throne — the dynastic successor formula.

ἐπάνωθεν

from upon

preposition/adverb + genitive (separation: 'from off')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπάνωθεν: 'from above / from off'; renders עַל־מִן; with θρόνου, 'from off the throne' — no heir will be removed from the royal seat.

θρόνου

throne

Genitive

genitive object of ἐπάνωθεν

→ relational specification

θρόνος: 'throne'; renders כִּסֵּא; the throne of Israel as the locus of the perpetual Davidic dynasty.

Ισραηλ

of Israel

genitive of relationship (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Ισραηλ: transliteration of יִשְׂרָאֵל; indeclinable; 'the throne of Israel' designates the united Davidic kingship.

5 καί γε σὺ ἔγνωνς ὅσα ἐποίησέν μοι Ἰωαβ υἱὸς Σαρουιας ὅσα ἐποίησεν τοῖς δυσὶν ἄρχουσιν τῶν δυνάμεων Ἰσραηλ τῷ Αβεννηρ υἱῷ Νηρ καὶ τῷ Αμεσσαῖ υἱῷ Ιεθερ καὶ ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτοὺς καὶ ἔταξεν τὰ αἵματα πολέμου ἐν εἰρήνῃ καὶ ἔδωκεν αἷμα ἀθῶνον ἐν τῇ ζώνῃ αὐτοῦ τῇ ἐν τῇ ὀσφύϊ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐν τῷ ὑποδήματι αὐτοῦ τῷ ἐν τῷ ποδὶ αὐτοῦ

Moreover you yourself know what Joab son of Zeruah did to me, what he did to the two commanders of the armies of Israel — to Abner son of Ner and to Amasa son of Jether — how he killed them and avenged the blood of war in peacetime, and put innocent blood on his belt that was around his waist and on his sandal that was on his foot.

Direct speech: first specific charge (the case against Joab)

καί γε σὺ ἔγνωνς

David shifts from general piety to particular reckonings. The emphatic καί γε σύ ('and moreover you yourself') and the appeal to Solomon's own knowledge (ἔγνωνς) frame the indictment of Joab for the murders of Abner (2 Sam 3:27) and Amasa (2 Sam 20:10): shedding 'blood of war in peace' and so defiling his garments with innocent blood. The graphic image of bloodguilt clinging to belt and sandal renders the Hebrew with vivid concreteness.

καί

and / moreover

coordinate conjunction (with γε, emphatic transition)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: here with γε forming the emphatic transitional 'and moreover / furthermore.'

γε

indeed

emphatic particle (post-positive, intensifying)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

γε: enclitic emphatic particle; καί γε renders Hebrew וְגַם ('and also / indeed'), strengthening the appeal to Solomon's own knowledge.

σὺ

you

Nominative

subject (emphatic personal pronoun)

→ participant reference

σύ: emphatic — 'you yourself know,' invoking Solomon as competent witness to Joab's crimes.

ἔγνωνς

you know / knew

Aor Act Indic 2 Sg · γινώσκω

main verb

→ constative aorist (settled, established knowledge)

γινώσκω: 'know / recognize'; the aorist 'you came to know / you know' appeals to Solomon's awareness of Joab's deeds as common knowledge.

ὅσα

what / all that

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ἐποίησεν, clausal object of ἔγνω)

→ participant reference

ὅσος: 'as much/many as / all that'; introduces the indirect object-clause of ἔγνω.

ἐποίησέν

he did

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ποιέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist (Joab's past deeds)

ποιέω: 'do / make'; here of Joab's acts of violence against David's interests.

μοι

to me

Dative

dative of disadvantage

→ participant reference or interest

μοι: meaning 'to me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative of disadvantage.

Ιωαβ

Joab

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: transliteration of יואב; indeclinable; David's nephew and army commander, here the object of David's posthumous reckoning.

υἷος

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Ιωαβ

→ participant prominence

υἷος: 'son'; the patronymic 'son of Zeruiah' identifies Joab (Zeruiah being David's sister).

Σαρουιας

of Zeruiah

Genitive

genitive of relationship (patronymic/metronymic)

→ relational specification

Σαρουια: transliteration of צְרוּיָה (Zeruiah), David's sister; declined here as a genitive (Σαρουιας); the matronymic is regular for Joab and his brothers.

ὅσα

what / all that

Accusative

relative pronoun (resumptive, object of second ἐποίησεν)

→ participant reference

ὅσος: resumptive repetition specifying the particular deeds — the murders of the two commanders.

ἐποίησεν

he did

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ποιέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist

ποιέω: repeated to specify the two murders.

τοῖς

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δυσὶν

two

Dative

numeral (modifying ἄρχουσιν)

→ sphere or reference

δύο: 'two'; dative δυσὶν; the 'two commanders' are Abner and Amasa, named in apposition.

ἄρχουσιν

commanders

Dative

dative indirect object (recipients of Joab's deed)

→ sphere or reference

ἄρχων: 'ruler / commander / officer'; renders שׂר; here the two army-commanders Joab treacherously slew.

τῶν

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῶν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δυνάμεων

armies / forces

Genitive

genitive (commanders 'of the armies')

→ relational specification

δύναμις: 'power / force / army'; renders נָחֳשׁ; the plural 'armies/forces of Israel.'

Ισραηλ

of Israel

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ισραηλ: indeclinable; here genitive 'of Israel.'

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Αβεννηρ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αβεννηρ

Abner

dative in apposition to ἄρχουσιν (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Αβεννηρ: transliteration of אֲבִנֵּר (Abner), Saul's army-commander, murdered by Joab at Hebron (2 Sam 3:27); indeclinable, case shown by τῷ.

υἱῷ

son

Dative

dative in apposition to Αβεννηρ

→ sphere or reference

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Ner.'

Νηρ

of Ner

genitive of relationship (indeclinable patronymic)

→ participant identification

Νηρ: transliteration of נֵר (Ner); indeclinable; Abner's father.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Αμεσσαΐ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αμεσσαΐ

Amasa

dative in apposition to ἄρχουσιν (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Αμεσσαΐ: transliteration of אֲמַסָּא (Amasa), Absalom's then David's commander, treacherously killed by Joab (2 Sam 20:9–10); indeclinable.

υἱῷ

son

Dative

dative in apposition to Αμεσσαΐ

→ sphere or reference

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jether.'

Ιεθερ

of Jether

genitive of relationship (indeclinable patronymic)

→ participant identification

Ιεθερ: transliteration of יֶתֶר (Jether/Ithra); indeclinable; Amasa's father.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέκτεινεν

he killed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποκτείνω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the murders)

ἀποκτείνω: 'kill / slay'; renders גָּרַח; the blunt verb names Joab's two treacherous killings.

αὐτούς

them

Accusative

direct object (Abner and Amasa)

→ participant reference

αὐτούς: meaning 'them'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object (Abner and Amasa).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔταξεν

he set / avenged

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · τάσσω

main verb

→ constative aorist

τάσσω: 'arrange / appoint / set'; here 'set/charged the blood of war in peace' — i.e., he exacted wartime bloodshed during a time of peace, incurring bloodguilt (rendering Hebrew דָּשַׁן, 'place/put').

τὰ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αἵματα

blood / bloodshed

Accusative

direct object of ἔταξεν

→ object specification

αἷμα: 'blood'; the plural αἵματα (rendering דָּמָה) is the idiomatic 'bloodshed / bloodguilt'; 'the blood of war' = bloodshed proper to battle.

πολέμου

of war

Genitive

genitive of quality (with αἵματα)

→ relational specification

πόλεμος: 'war / battle'; renders מִלְחָמָה; 'blood of war' — bloodshed legitimate only in warfare, here shed in peace.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (temporal/circumstantial)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (temporal/circumstantial).

εἰρήνη

peace / peacetime

Dative

dative of circumstance (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

εἰρήνη: 'peace'; renders שָׁלוֹם; the antithesis 'war-blood in peace' is the crux of Joab's guilt — wartime killing committed during peacetime.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔδωκεν

he put / placed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · δίδωμι

main verb

→ constative aorist

δίδωμι: 'give / put / place'; renders נָתַן; here 'put innocent blood' — the bloodguilt clings to Joab's own garments.

αἷμα

blood

Accusative

direct object of ἔδωκεν

→ object specification

αἷμα: 'blood'; here singular with the adjective 'innocent.'

ἄθῳον

innocent

Accusative

attributive adjective (modifying αἷμα)

→ object specification

ἄθῳος: 'innocent / guiltless / unpunished'; renders יָקִי; 'innocent blood' (יָקִי יְקִי) is the technical term for the unjust killing that defiles and demands requital (cf. Deut 19:10).

ἐν

on / in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

τῇ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ζώνη

belt / girdle

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

ζώνη: 'belt / girdle'; renders הַזֶּרֶק; the bloodguilt is graphically located on Joab's military belt — the very gear of his treachery.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

τῇ

the (one)

Dative

article (attributive, 'the one on his waist')

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐν

on / around

preposition + dative (locative, in attributive phrase)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative, in attributive phrase).

τῇ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ὀσφύι

waist / loins

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

ὀσφῦς: 'loins / waist'; renders הַמֵּתֶנֶת; the attributive phrase 'the (belt) on his waist' specifies the location concretely.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐν

on / in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

τῷ the Dative article → noun-phrase marking τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.	ὑποδήματι sandal Dative dative of place (with ἐν) → sphere or reference ὑπόδημα: 'sandal / footwear'; renders לַגֵּל; the second locus of bloodguilt — belt and sandal together (a merism for Joab's whole person) bear the stain.	αὐτοῦ his Genitive genitive of possession → relational specification αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.	τῷ the (one) Dative article (attributive, 'the one on his foot') → noun-phrase marking τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.
ἐν on preposition + dative (locative, in attributive phrase) → spatial or relational framing ἐν: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative, in attributive phrase).	τῷ the Dative article → noun-phrase marking τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.	ποδὶ foot Dative dative of place (with ἐν) → sphere or reference ποῦς: 'foot'; renders לַגֵּל; 'the (sandal) on his foot' completes the vivid image of bloodguilt clinging to Joab from belt to footwear.	αὐτοῦ his Genitive genitive of possession → relational specification αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

6 καὶ ποιήσεις κατὰ τὴν σοφίαν σου καὶ οὐ κατάξεις τὴν πολιὰν αὐτοῦ ἐν εἰρήνῃ εἰς ᾧδου

So you shall act according to your wisdom, and you shall not bring his gray head down to Hades in peace.

Direct speech: the verdict on Joab (consequence of vv. 5)

καὶ ποιήσεις

David draws the practical conclusion: Solomon's σοφία ('wisdom') is to find the means; the negated imperatival future οὐ κατάξεις ... ἐν εἰρήνῃ ('do not let his gray head go down to Hades in peace') means Joab must not die a peaceful natural death but suffer judicial requital. The phrase 'gray head' (πολιά) is a metonymy for aged Joab; cf. the inverted command at v. 9 concerning Shimei.

καὶ
and / so

coordinate conjunction (consecutive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ποιήσεις
you shall act

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · ποιέω

main verb (imperative future)

→ imperative future (charge to act)

ποιέω: 'do / act'; the imperative future commits the manner of dealing with Joab to Solomon's discretion ('according to your wisdom').

κατὰ
according to

preposition + accusative (norm/standard)

→ spatial or relational framing

κατά + accusative: 'according to / in conformity with.'

τὴν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

σοφίαν
wisdom

Accusative

accusative object of κατά

→ object specification

σοφία: 'wisdom / skill'; renders חָכְמָה; David appeals to Solomon's proverbial wisdom to devise the appropriate (lethal) response to Joab — a motif developed in the miscellany at v. 35a–b.

σου
your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

οὐ
not

negative particle (with future indicative)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of the imperative future — 'you shall not let.'

κατάξεις
you shall bring down

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · κατάγω

main verb (negated imperative future)

→ imperative future (prohibition of peaceful death)

κατάγω: 'lead/bring down'; renders הוריד; the idiom 'bring the gray head down to Hades' = cause death; negated with ἐν εἰρήνῃ it means Joab must not die peacefully but by violent requital (contrast the positive command re Shimei in v. 9).

τὴν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πολιὰν
gray head / old age

Accusative

direct object of κατάξεις

→ object specification

πολιά: 'gray hair / gray head / old age'; renders הַשֵּׂיבָה; metonymy for the aged Joab; 'his gray head' personalizes the death-sentence.

αὐτοῦ
his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (manner)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (manner).

εἰρήνη

peace

Dative

dative of manner (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

εἰρήνη: 'peace'; renders עִנְיָן ; 'in peace' = a peaceful natural death, which Joab is not to be granted — a fitting requital for shedding 'blood of war in peace' (v. 5).

εἰς

to / into

preposition + genitive (here with ᾧδου, 'to Hades')

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'to / into'; with ᾧδου, 'down to Hades' (the realm of the dead).

ᾧδου

Hades / Sheol

Genitive

genitive of place (with εἰς: 'to Hades')

→ relational specification

ᾧδης: 'Hades / the grave / the underworld'; renders שְׁאוֹל ; the realm of the dead to which death 'brings down'; εἰς ᾧδου is an idiom ('to the house of Hades').

7 καὶ τοῖς υἱοῖς Βερζελλι τοῦ Γαλααδίτου ποιήσεις ἔλεος καὶ ἔσονται ἐν τοῖς ἐσθίουσιν τὴν τράπεζάν σου ὅτι οὕτως ἤγγισάν μοι ἐν τῷ με ἀποδιδράσκειν ἀπὸ προσώπου Αβεσσαλωμ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σου

But to the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite you shall show kindness, and they shall be among those who eat at your table, because they drew near to me thus when I was fleeing from the face of Absalom your brother.

Direct speech: the charge of kindness (positive counterpart to Joab/Shimei)

καὶ τοῖς υἱοῖς Βερζελλι

Amid the death-sentences David inserts a charge of covenant kindness: the sons of Barzillai, who provisioned David during his flight from Absalom (2 Sam 17:27–29; 19:31–40), are to eat at the royal table — a mark of permanent honored dependence. ποιήσεις ἔλεος ('do kindness') is the deuteronomistic hesed idiom; the ὅτι-clause grounds the reward in their earlier loyalty.

καὶ

and / but

coordinate conjunction (contrastive turn)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τοῖς

to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

υἱοῖς

sons

Dative

dative indirect object (recipients of kindness)

→ sphere or reference

υἱός: 'son'; 'the sons of Barzillai' — the beneficiaries of David's gratitude.

Βερζελλι

of Barzillai

genitive of relationship (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Βερζελλι: transliteration of בֶּרְזִילַי (Barzillai); indeclinable; the wealthy Gileadite who sustained David at Mahanaim (2 Sam 17:27–29).

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (with gentilic Γαλααδίου)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Γαλααδίτου

the Gileadite

Genitive

gentilic attributive (gentilic, modifying Βερζελλί)

→ relational specification

Γαλααδίτης: 'Gileadite'; gentilic from Γαλααδ (Gilead, גִּלְעָד); declinable, here genitive; identifies Barzillai by region east of the Jordan.

ποιήσεις

you shall show / do

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · ποιέω

main verb (imperative future)

→ imperative future (charge of kindness)

ποιέω: 'do / show'; with ἔλεος forms the idiom 'do kindness / show loyalty' (נָשַׁבְתִּי לְדָוִד, the deuteronomistic language of covenant reciprocity.

ἔλεος

kindness / mercy

Accusative

direct object of ποιήσεις

→ object specification

ἔλεος: 'mercy / kindness / loyal love'; renders נָשַׁבְתִּי; here covenant kindness repaying Barzillai's loyalty to David.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔσονται

they shall be

Fut Mid Indic 3 Pl · εἰμί

main verb (predictive future)

→ predictive future (their honored status)

εἰμί (fut.): 'be'; 'they shall be among those eating at your table' — perpetual royal patronage as a mark of honor.

ἐν

among

preposition + dative (membership)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'among'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (membership).

τοῖς

the (ones)

Dative

article (with substantival participle)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐσθίουσιν

those who eat

Pres Act Part Dat Masc Pl · ἐσθίω

substantival participle (object of ἐν: 'among those eating')

→ customary present (habitual table-fellowship)

ἐσθίω: 'eat'; the substantival participle 'those eating at your table' denotes the privileged royal pensioners (cf. Mephibosheth, 2 Sam 9:7).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

τράπεζάν

table

Accusative

accusative (object of ἐσθίουσιν: 'eat the table' = eat at the table)

→ object specification

τράπεζα: 'table'; renders נִשְׁבַּח; 'eating the king's table' is a Hebraism for permanent maintenance at royal expense.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ὅτι

because

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; introduces the ground of the reward — Barzillai's family's loyalty during David's flight.

οὕτως

thus / so

adverb of manner

→ adverbial qualification

οὕτως: 'thus / in this way'; 'they drew near to me thus' = they came to my aid in this manner (with provisions).

ἤγγισάν

they drew near

Aor Act Indic 3 Pl · ἐγγίζω

verb of causal clause

→ constative aorist (the past act of loyalty)

ἐγγίζω: 'draw near / approach'; here 'they drew near to me' = came to my support in crisis (the same verb opening the chapter at v. 1, now of loyal aid).

μοι

to me

Dative

dative (object of ἤγγισαν)

→ participant reference or interest

μοι: meaning 'to me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative (object of ἤγγισαν).

ἐν

in / when

preposition + dative (temporal, with articular infinitive)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: with the articular infinitive τῷ ... ἀποδιδράσκειν forms a temporal clause 'when I was fleeing' (Hebraism rendering עַל + infinitive).

τῷ

the

Dative

article (governing articular infinitive)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

με

I / me

Accusative

accusative subject of the infinitive ἀποδιδράσκειν

→ participant reference

ἐγώ: accusative subject of the articular infinitive ('when I was fleeing').

ἀποδιδράσκειν

to flee / run away

Pres Act Inf · ἀποδιδράσκω

articular infinitive (temporal, with ἐν τῷ)

→ durative present (the whole period of flight)

ἀποδιδράσκω: 'run away / flee secretly'; renders פָּלַח; refers to David's flight from Jerusalem during Absalom's revolt (2 Sam 15–17).

ἀπὸ

from

preposition + genitive (separation)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀπὸ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (separation).

προσώπου

face / presence

Genitive

genitive object of ἀπό (Hebraism: 'from the face of')

→ relational specification

πρόσωπον: 'face / presence'; ἀπὸ προσώπου ('from the face of') is a Hebraism rendering מִפְּנֵי, 'away from / before!'

Αβессαλωμ

Absalom

genitive of relationship (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Αβессαλωμ: transliteration of אַבְשָׁלֹם (Absalom); indeclinable; David's rebel son whose revolt forced David's flight.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἀδελφοῦ

brother

Genitive

genitive in apposition to Αβεσσαλωμ

→ relational specification

ἀδελφός: 'brother'; Absalom is named as Solomon's (half-)brother, a poignant reminder of the fratricidal dangers surrounding the throne.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

- 8 καὶ ἰδοὺ μετὰ σοῦ Σεμεὶ υἱὸς Γηρα υἱὸς τοῦ Ιεμενι ἐκ Βαουριμ καὶ αὐτὸς κατηράσατό με κατάραν ὁδυνηρὰν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἣ ἐπορευόμην εἰς παρεμβολάς καὶ αὐτὸς κατέβη εἰς ἀπαντήν μου εἰς τὸν Ιορδάνην καὶ ὥμοσα αὐτῷ ἐν κυρίῳ λέγων εἰ θανατώσω σε ἐν ῥομφαίᾳ

And behold, with you is Shimei son of Gera, the Benjamite from Bahurim; and he cursed me with a grievous curse on the day I went to the camps. But he came down to meet me at the Jordan, and I swore to him by the LORD, saying, 'I will surely not put you to death by the sword.'

Direct speech: the case of Shimei (the unfinished business) καὶ ἰδοὺ μετὰ σοῦ Σεμεῖ

David turns to his most delicate score. The presentative ἰδοὺ ('behold') flags Shimei son of Gera, the Benjamite who cursed David during the flight from Absalom (2 Sam 16:5–13). David recalls his own oath of clemency at the Jordan (2 Sam 19:18–23). The oath-formula εἰ θανατώσω σε ('[I swore] if I shall kill you') is a Hebraism: an oath introduced by Hebrew אִם functions as an emphatic negative — 'I will surely not kill you' — which sets up the dilemma resolved in v. 9.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἰδοὺ

behold

Aor Mid Impv 2 Sg · ὁράω (frozen interjection)

presentative particle (attention-marker)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἰδοὺ: 'behold / look'; frozen imperative functioning as a presentative interjection, rendering הִנֵּה; introduces Shimei as a present concern 'with you.'

μετὰ

with

preposition + genitive (association)

→ spatial or relational framing

μετά + genitive: 'with'; 'with you (is)' — Shimei remains in Solomon's sphere, an outstanding liability.

σοῦ

you

Genitive

genitive object of μετά

→ relational specification

σοῦ: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive object of μετά.

Σεμεὶ

Shimei

subject (predicate of the verbless clause; indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σεμεὶ: transliteration of שְׁמַי (Shimei); indeclinable; the Benjamite of Saul's clan who cursed David (2 Sam 16:5–13).

υἱός

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Σεμεὶ

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Gera.'

Γηρα

of Gera

genitive of relationship (indeclinable patronymic)

→ participant identification

Γηρα: transliteration of גֵּרָא (Gera); indeclinable; Shimei's father, of the tribe of Benjamin.

υἱός

son / member

Nominative

nominative in apposition (gentilic 'a Benjamite')

→ participant prominence

υἱός: here 'son of the Yemini' = a Benjamite (son of the right hand, הַיְמָיִי, בֶּן); a Hebraizing gentilic designation.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (governing indeclinable Ἰεμενι)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Ἰεμενι

Benjamite / Yemini

genitive of relationship (indeclinable gentilic, case via article)

→ participant identification

Ἰεμενι: transliteration of הַיְמָיִי ('the Benjamite / the right-handed'); indeclinable, case marked by τοῦ; identifies Shimei's tribal origin (Benjamin, Saul's tribe).

ἐκ

from

preposition + genitive (origin)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐκ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (origin).

Βαουριμ

Bahurim

genitive of place (indeclinable place-name, with ἐκ)

→ participant identification

Βαουριμ: transliteration of בְּהַרִּים (Bahurim); indeclinable; the Benjamite village from which Shimei cursed David (2 Sam 16:5).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αὐτός

he

Nominative

subject (emphatic/resumptive pronoun)

→ participant reference

αὐτός: emphatic 'he himself' — focusing attention on Shimei's culpable act of cursing.

κατηράσατό

cursed

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · καταράομαι

main verb (with cognate accusative κατάραν)

→ constative aorist (the act of cursing)

καταράομαι: 'curse / invoke evil upon'; renders לָחַץ; with the cognate accusative κατάραν ('cursed a curse') it is a Hebraism intensifying the gravity of Shimei's imprecation against the LORD's anointed.

με

me

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

με: meaning 'me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

κατάραν

a curse

Accusative

cognate accusative (with κατηράσατο)

→ object specification

κατάρα: 'curse / imprecation'; the cognate accusative κατηράσατο κατάραν renders the Hebrew construction emphasizing the curse's severity.

ὀδυνηράν

grievous / painful

Accusative

attributive adjective (modifying κατάραν)

→ object specification

ὀδυνηρός: 'painful / grievous / bitter'; renders מְרִירָה ('vehement / grievous'); intensifies the cognate curse as deeply wounding.

τῇ

the

Dative

article (temporal dative)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέρα

day

Dative

dative of time (when)

→ sphere or reference

ἡμέρα: 'day'; dative of time 'on the day' — i.e., the day of David's flight.

ἣ

on which

Dative

relative pronoun (dative of time, modifying ἡμέρα)

→ participant reference or interest

ὅς: relative pronoun, dat. fem. sg.; 'on which (day) I went' — temporal relative clause.

ἐπορευόμεν

I was going

Impf Mid Indic 1 Sg · πορεύομαι

verb of relative clause

→ imperfect (the journey in progress)

πορεύομαι: 'go / journey'; the imperfect depicts David's flight 'to the camps' as in progress when Shimei cursed him.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

παρεμβολάς

camps / encampments

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

παρεμβολή: 'camp / encampment / army'; renders מַחֲנֵיִם (Mahana'im, taken as 'camps'); David fled toward Mahana'im during Absalom's revolt — the LXX may read it as the common noun 'camps.'

καὶ

and / but

narrative conjunction (mild contrast)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αὐτός

he

Nominative

subject (emphatic/resumptive pronoun)

→ participant reference

αὐτός: emphatic 'he himself' — Shimei came down in submission at the Jordan.

κατέβη

came down

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · καταβαίνω

main verb

→ constative aorist

καταβαίνω: 'go/come down'; renders ירד; Shimei descended to the Jordan to meet the returning David and beg pardon (2 Sam 19:18–20).

εἰς

to / for

preposition + accusative (purpose: 'to meet')

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: here with ἀπαντήν, 'for a meeting / to meet.'

ἀπαντήν

a meeting

Accusative

accusative (with εἰς: 'to meet me')

→ object specification

ἀπάντησις/ἀπαντή: 'meeting / encounter'; εἰς ἀπαντήν μου ('to meet me') is the idiom rendering תלך.

μου

me / my

Genitive

genitive (object of the verbal noun ἀπαντήν)

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive (object of the verbal noun ἀπαντήν).

εἰς

at / to

preposition + accusative (place toward)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'at'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (place toward).

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Ιορδάνην

Jordan

Accusative

accusative of place (with εἰς)

→ object specification

Ιορδάνης: transliteration of ירדן (Jordan); declined as a first-declension noun (acc. Ιορδάνην); the river David recrossed on his return to Jerusalem.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὤμοσα

I swore

Aor Act Indic 1 Sg · ὀμνυμι

main verb

→ constative aorist (the binding oath)

ὀμνυμι: 'swear (an oath)'; renders נשבע; David's oath to spare Shimei (2 Sam 19:23) creates the legal-moral bind that complicates Solomon's task.

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

ἐν

by

preposition + dative (oath-instrument)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: here instrumental 'by' — swearing 'by the LORD' (Hebraism, בַּיהוָה).

κυρίῳ

the LORD

Dative

dative (object of ἐν: oath sworn by YHWH)

→ sphere or reference

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; the oath 'by the LORD' invokes YHWH as guarantor, making David's clemency religiously binding.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing, Hebraism)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: λέγων introducing the content of the oath, calquing רַמַּלְאָה.

εἰ

[surely not]

conditional particle (Hebraic oath-formula = emphatic negation)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

εἰ: ordinarily 'if'; in an oath it renders Hebrew ׀, which functions as an emphatic negative — 'if I kill you (may God do so to me)' = 'I will surely not kill you'; an idiomatic self-imprecatory oath.

θανατώσω

I shall put to death

Fut Act Indic 1 Sg · θανατώω

main verb of oath-clause (apodosis suppressed)

→ future (within the Hebraic oath-negation)

θανατώω: 'put to death / kill'; renders תְּמִית; within the εἰ-oath the future is effectively negated — David swore he would not execute Shimei (cf. the resolution Solomon devises in v. 9).

σε

you

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

σε: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

ἐν

by / with

preposition + dative (instrument)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'by'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (instrument).

ρόμφαίᾳ

sword

Dative

dative of instrument (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

ρόμφαία: 'sword / large broadsword'; renders רֶפֶד; the specified manner of execution David swore to forgo — leaving open other means, which Solomon exploits (v. 9).

9 καὶ οὐ μὴ ἀθώωσης αὐτόν ὅτι ἀνὴρ σοφὸς εἶ σύ καὶ γνώσῃ ἃ ποιήσεις αὐτῷ καὶ κατάξεις τὴν πολιὰν αὐτοῦ ἐν αἵματι εἰς ᾧδου

But now you shall by no means hold him guiltless, for you are a wise man and will know what you should do to him; and you shall bring his gray head down to Hades in blood.

Direct speech: the verdict on Shimei (resolving the oath-dilemma) καὶ οὐ μὴ ἀθώωσης αὐτόν

David transfers the unfulfilled judgment to Solomon, who is not bound by David's personal oath. The emphatic οὐ μὴ + aorist subjunctive ('by no means hold guiltless') and the appeal to Solomon's wisdom (ἀνὴρ σοφὸς εἶ σύ) deftly authorize Shimei's death while preserving David's sworn word. The positive command κατάξεις ... ἐν αἵματι ('bring his gray head down in blood') exactly inverts the Joab clause of v. 6 (οὐ κατάξεις ... ἐν εἰρήνῃ).

καὶ

and / but

coordinate conjunction (adversative turn)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

οὐ

not

negative particle (with μὴ, emphatic)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: with μὴ forms the emphatic double negation οὐ μὴ ('by no means'), the strongest Greek prohibition/denial.

μὴ

[not]

negative particle (οὐ μὴ + aor. subj. = emphatic prohibition)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

μὴ: the second member of οὐ μὴ; with the aorist subjunctive ἀθώωσης it forms an emphatic prohibition addressed to Solomon.

ἀθώωσης

hold guiltless / leave unpunished

Aor Act Subj 2 Sg · ἀθώω

main verb (prohibitive subjunctive with οὐ μὴ)

→ prohibitive aorist subjunctive (emphatic command not to acquit)

ἀθώω: 'hold innocent / leave unpunished / acquit'; renders תְּנֵן (Piel, 'treat as guiltless'); cognate with ἀθῶν ('innocent', v. 5); Solomon is charged not to let Shimei's cursing go unrequited.

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object (Shimei)

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object (Shimei).

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; grounds the charge in Solomon's competence to devise the means.

άνήρ

a man

Nominative

predicate nominative (with εἶ: 'you are a man')

→ participant prominence

άνήρ: 'man'; predicate 'a wise man' — flattering Solomon's discernment to authorize a delicate act.

σοφός

wise

Nominative

predicate adjective (modifying άνήρ)

→ participant prominence

σοφός: 'wise / skilled'; renders σοφία; Solomon's wisdom (cf. σοφία, v. 6) qualifies him to find a way to execute Shimei without violating David's oath — anticipating his proverbial wisdom (miscellany 35a-b; ch. 3).

εἶ

you are

Pres Act Indic 2 Sg · εἰμί

copula

→ stative present

εἰμί: 'be'; copula of the predicate-adjective clause 'you are a wise man.'

σύ

you

Nominative

subject (emphatic personal pronoun)

→ participant reference

σύ: emphatic 'you (yourself).'

καί

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

γνώση

you will know

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · γινώσκω

main verb (predictive future)

→ predictive future (Solomon will discern the means)

γινώσκω: 'know / recognize'; 'you will know what to do' — Solomon's wisdom will supply the prudent course (he later confines and then executes Shimei, vv. 36–46).

ἃ

what

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ποιήσεις)

→ participant reference

ἃ: relative pronoun, neut. pl.; 'the things which you should do.'

ποιήσεις

you shall do

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · ποίέω

verb of relative clause

→ predictive/deliberative future

ποιέω: 'do'; here of the action Solomon will take against Shimei.

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

καί

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

κατάξεις you shall bring down Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · κατάγω <i>main verb (imperative future)</i> → imperative future (positive death-charge) κατάγω: 'bring down'; the same idiom as v. 6 but now positive and 'in blood' — the exact inversion of the Joab clause, charging Solomon to bring about Shimei's violent death.	τὴν the Accusative <i>article</i> → noun-phrase marking τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.	πολιὰν gray head / old age Accusative <i>direct object of κατάξεις</i> → object specification πολιά: 'gray head / old age'; metonymy for the aged Shimei, as for Joab in v. 6.	αὐτοῦ his Genitive <i>genitive of possession</i> → relational specification αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.
ἐν in / with <i>preposition + dative (manner/circumstance)</i> → spatial or relational framing ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (manner/circumstance).	αἵματι blood Dative <i>dative of manner (with ἐν: 'in blood')</i> → sphere or reference αἷμα: 'blood'; 'in blood' (= by a bloody/violent death) inverts 'in peace' of v. 6 — Shimei is to die violently.	εἰς to <i>preposition + genitive (with ᾧδου)</i> → spatial or relational framing εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (with ᾧδου).	ᾧδου Hades / Sheol Genitive <i>genitive of place (with εἰς: 'to Hades')</i> → relational specification ᾧδης: 'Hades / the grave'; renders ὁ ᾗδης; the realm of the dead; εἰς ᾧδου ('to Hades'), as in v. 6, completes the death-charge.

10 καὶ ἐκοιμήθη Δαυιδ μετὰ τῶν πατέρων αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐτάφη ἐν πόλει Δαυιδ

And David slept with his fathers and was buried in the city of David.

Narrative resumption: the death-and-burial notice (regnal formula) καὶ ἐκοιμήθη Δαυιδ

The narrative resumes with the standard deuteronomistic death-and-burial formula 'X slept with his fathers and was buried in ...' (cf. 11:43; 14:31), recurring for every Judahite king. The euphemism ἐκοιμήθη ('slept') for death and the dynastic burial 'in the city of David' (Zion) seal David's reign and transfer focus to Solomon.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐκοιμήθη

slept / died

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · κοιμάομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist (the death)

κοιμάομαι: 'lie down / sleep'; renders כָּשַׁב; 'slept with his fathers' (יוֹשֵׁב עִם אֲבוֹתָיו) is the deuteronomistic euphemism for a king's peaceful death and burial in the ancestral tomb.

Δαυיד

David

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Δαυיד: indeclinable; here nominative subject.

μετὰ

with

preposition + genitive (association)

→ spatial or relational framing

μετὰ: meaning 'with'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (association).

τῶν

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῶν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πατέρων

fathers / ancestors

Genitive

genitive object of μετὰ

→ relational specification

πατήρ: 'father / ancestor'; renders אָב; 'with his fathers' = joined to the ancestral dead, the standard regnal death-formula.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐτάφη

was buried

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · θάπτω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the burial)

θάπτω: 'bury'; renders קָבַר; the burial 'in the city of David' establishes the royal necropolis on Zion.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

πόλει

city

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

πόλις: 'city'; 'the city of David' (עִיר דָּוִד) is the Jebusite stronghold of Zion captured by David (2 Sam 5:7), now the royal burial-place.

Δαυיד

of David

genitive of relationship (indeclinable, 'city of David')

→ participant identification

Δαυיד: indeclinable; here genitive in the place-name 'city of David.'

11 καὶ αἱ ἡμέραι ἃς ἐβασίλευσεν Δαυὶδ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰσραὴλ τεσσαράκοντα ἔτη ἐν Χεβρων ἐβασίλευσεν ἔτη ἑπτὰ καὶ ἐν Ἱερουσαλὴμ τριάκοντα τρία ἔτη

And the days that David reigned over Israel were forty years: in Hebron he reigned seven years, and in Jerusalem thirty-three years.

Narrative: regnal-length summary (chronological formula)

καὶ αἱ ἡμέραι ἃς ἐβασίλευσεν Δαυὶδ

The regnal-length notice (cf. 2 Sam 5:4–5) tallies David's forty-year reign, divided between Hebron (seven years over Judah) and Jerusalem (thirty-three years over all Israel). The figure forty marks a full, ideal reign; the casus pendens construction 'the days that David reigned ... forty years' is a Hebraizing nominal summary.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αἱ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

αἱ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέραι

days

Nominative

subject (casus pendens / nominative absolute)

→ participant prominence

ἡμέρα: 'day'; 'the days that David reigned' = the duration of his reign, a Hebraizing temporal summary (יָמַי).

ἃς

which

Accusative

relative pronoun (accusative of extent, object of ἐβασίλευσεν)

→ participant reference

ἃς: relative pronoun, acc. fem. pl.; 'the days during which he reigned' (accusative of temporal extent).

ἐβασίλευσεν

he reigned

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · βασιλεύω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist (the whole reign as a unit)

βασιλεύω: 'be king / reign'; renders מָלַךְ; the constative aorist sums up the entire reign.

Δαυὶδ

David

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυὶδ: indeclinable; subject of the relative clause.

ἐπὶ

over

preposition + accusative (rule over)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + accusative: 'over'; 'reigned over Israel' (עַל יִשְׂרָאֵל).

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Ἰσραὴλ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Ισραηλ

Israel

accusative object of ἐπί (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Ισραηλ: indeclinable; the realm over which David reigned.

τεσσαράκοντα

forty

numeral (indeclinable, with ἔτη)

→ measure or count

τεσσαράκοντα: 'forty'; indeclinable cardinal; forty years is the ideal full-reign figure (cf. Saul, Solomon).

ἔτη

years

Accusative

accusative of extent of time

→ object specification

ἔτος: 'year'; accusative of duration 'forty years.'

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

Χεβρων

Hebron

dative of place (indeclinable place-name, with ἐν)

→ participant identification

Χεβρων: transliteration of חֶבְרוֹן (Hebron); indeclinable; David's first capital, where he reigned over Judah (2 Sam 5:5).

ἐβασίλευσεν

he reigned

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · βασιλεύω

main verb

→ constative aorist

βασιλεύω: repeated for the Hebron sub-total.

ἔτη

years

Accusative

accusative of extent of time

→ object specification

ἔτος: 'year'; the seven-year Hebron sub-total.

ἐπτά

seven

numeral (indeclinable, with ἔτη)

→ measure or count

ἐπτά: 'seven'; indeclinable cardinal; David's seven years over Judah at Hebron.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

Ιερουσαλημ

Jerusalem

dative of place (indeclinable place-name, with ἐν)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: transliteration of יְרוּשָׁלַיִם (Jerusalem); indeclinable; David's united capital after capturing Zion (2 Sam 5:6–9).

триάκοντα

thirty

numeral (indeclinable, with ἔτη)

→ measure or count

триάκοντα: 'thirty'; indeclinable cardinal; part of the Jerusalem sub-total.

τρία

three

Accusative

numeral (with τριάκοντα and ἔτη)

→ measure or count

τρεῖς, τρία: 'three'; neuter τρία with ἔτη; 'thirty-three years' over all Israel from Jerusalem.

ἔτη

years

Accusative

accusative of extent of time

→ object specification

ἔτος: 'year'; the thirty-three-year Jerusalem sub-total, completing the forty.

12 καὶ Σαλωμων ἐκάθισεν ἐπὶ τοῦ θρόνου Δαυιδ τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ υἱὸς ἐτῶν δώδεκα καὶ ἡτοιμάσθη ἡ βασιλεία αὐτοῦ σφόδρα

And Solomon sat upon the throne of David his father, a son of twelve years, and his kingdom was firmly established.

Narrative: Solomon's accession and the establishment refrain

καὶ Σαλωμων ἐκάθισεν

Solomon's accession is stated in dynastic terms — 'sat upon the throne of David his father' — fulfilling the promise of v. 4. The LXX plus 'a son of twelve years' (υἱὸς ἐτῶν δώδεκα), absent from the MT, makes Solomon a youth at accession (cf. 'a little child,' 3:7). The closing refrain ἡτοιμάσθη ἡ βασιλεία αὐτοῦ σφόδρα ('his kingdom was firmly established') frames the rival-purges of vv. 13–46 and is echoed at v. 46.

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Σαλωμων
Solomon

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; here nominative subject, the new king.

ἐκάθισεν
sat

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · καθίζω

main verb

→ ingressive aorist (took his seat = acceded)

καθίζω: 'sit / sit down / be enthroned'; renders כָּשָׁׁ; 'sat on the throne' = formally acceded to kingship, fulfilling the dynastic promise of v. 4.

ἐπὶ
upon

preposition + genitive (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπὶ: meaning 'upon'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (position).

τοῦ
the

Genitive
article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θρόνου
throne

Genitive

genitive object of ἐπὶ

→ relational specification

θρόνος: 'throne'; renders מִן הַכִּסֵּי; 'the throne of David his father' stresses dynastic continuity (cf. vv. 4, 24, 45).

Δαυιδ
of David

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; here genitive 'of David.'

τοῦ
the

Genitive

article (in apposition to Δαυιδ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πατὴρ

father

Genitive

genitive in apposition to Δαυὶδ

→ relational specification

πατήρ: 'father'; 'David his father' underscores the legitimate father-to-son succession.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

υἱός

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Σαλωμων (age-formula)

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; the age-idiom 'a son of N years' (יָצַ N יָמַיִם) gives a person's age; here a LXX plus making Solomon twelve at accession.

ἐτῶν

of years

Genitive

genitive (in the age-idiom 'son of ... years')

→ relational specification

ἔτος: 'year'; genitive in the age-construction; absent from the MT, this notice depicts Solomon as a youth (cf. 3:7).

δώδεκα

twelve

numeral (indeclinable, with ἐτῶν)

→ clausal contribution

δώδεκα: 'twelve'; indeclinable cardinal; Solomon's age at accession according to this LXX plus.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἡτοιμάσθη

was established

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg· ἐτοιμάζω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the kingdom firmly set)

ἐτοιμάζω: 'prepare / make ready / establish'; renders יָכַן (Niphal, 'be established'); the divine-passive 'his kingdom was established' frames the entire chapter's politics — echoed in the closing refrain at v. 46 (κατωρθώθη).

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεία

kingdom / kingship

Nominative

subject of ἡτοιμάσθη

→ participant prominence

βασιλεία: 'kingdom / reign / kingship'; renders מַלְכוּת / מְלָכֻת; the consolidation of Solomon's rule, secured through the purges that follow.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

σφόδρα

exceedingly / firmly

adverb of degree (intensifying ἡτοιμάσθη)

→ clausal contribution

σφόδρα: 'very / exceedingly'; renders טַחַח; intensifies the establishment — the kingdom is 'very firmly' set.

13 καὶ εἰσῆλθεν Ἀδωνίας υἱὸς Ἀγγιθ πρὸς Βηρσαβее μητέρα Σαλωμων καὶ προσεκύνησεν αὐτῇ ἢ δὲ εἶπεν εἰρήνη ἢ εἵσοδος σου καὶ εἶπεν εἰρήνη

And Adonijah son of Haggith came to Bathsheba the mother of Solomon and prostrated himself before her. And she said, 'Is your coming in peace?' And he said, 'Peace.'

Narrative: new scene (the Adonijah episode begins) καὶ εἰσῆλθεν Ἀδωνίας

A new episode opens with the fatal request. Adonijah — Solomon's elder half-brother and former pretender (ch. 1) — approaches the queen mother Bathsheba with a deferential προσκύνησις. Her wary question εἰρήνη ἢ εἵσοδος σου ('is your coming peaceful?') and his terse reply εἰρήνη ('peace') heighten suspense; the reader knows Adonijah's earlier bid for the throne, so the exchange is laden with dramatic irony.

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἰσῆλθεν

came / went in

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰσέρχομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist (the approach)

εἰσέρχομαι: 'enter / come in'; renders מבוא; Adonijah's entrance to the queen mother sets the fatal request in motion.

Ἀδωνίας

Adonijah

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

Ἀδωνίας: transliteration of אֲדֹנִיָּא (Adonijah); declined as a first-declension masculine (nom. -ας); David's fourth son who had earlier sought the throne (ch. 1).

υἱὸς

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Ἀδωνίας

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; matronymic 'son of Haggith.'

Ἀγγιθ
of Haggith

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ἀγγιθ: transliteration of אֲגִיֶּת (Haggith); indeclinable; Adonijah's mother (2 Sam 3:4).

πρὸς
to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

Βηρσαβее
Bathsheba

accusative object of πρὸς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Βηρσαβее: transliteration of בַּת־שֶׁבַע (Bathsheba); indeclinable; the queen mother whose intercession Adonijah seeks (also spelled identically to the place-name Beersheba).

μητέρα
mother

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Βηρσαβее

→ object specification

μήτηρ: 'mother'; 'mother of Solomon' — the queen-mother (גְּבִיָּרָה) holds influence at court, which Adonijah hopes to exploit.

Σαλωμων

of Solomon

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; here genitive 'of Solomon.'

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

προσεκύνησεν

prostrated himself / did obeisance

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · προσκυνέω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the act of homage)

προσκυνέω: 'do obeisance / bow down / prostrate'; renders אֲדֹנִיָּה; Adonijah's deferential homage to the queen mother signals his subordinate, suppliant posture.

αὐτῇ

to her

Dative

dative object of προσεκύνησεν

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῇ: meaning 'to her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative object of προσεκύνησεν.

ἡ

she

Nominative

article used as pronoun (subject, with δέ)

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ/ἡ: the article ἡ with δέ ('and she') functions pronominally to mark a change of speaker — a standard LXX narrative device.

δὲ

and / but

narrative continuative (post-positive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

δέ: marks the shift to Bathsheba's response.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: 'say'; introduces Bathsheba's cautious question.

εἰρήνη

peace

Nominative

predicate nominative (verbless question: 'is your coming peace?')

→ participant prominence

εἰρήνη: 'peace / welfare'; renders שָׁלוֹם; the idiom 'is it peace?' (שָׁלוֹם הֲיָיָה) asks whether one comes with friendly intent — here freighted with suspicion given Adonijah's history.

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

εἴσοδος

coming in / entrance

Nominative

subject of the verbless question

→ participant prominence

εἴσοδος: 'entrance / coming in'; 'your coming' = the purpose/manner of your visit; the question probes Adonijah's intent.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

he said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Adonijah's reassuring one-word reply.

εἰρήνη

peace

Nominative

predicate nominative / one-word answer

→ participant prominence

εἰρήνη: 'peace'; Adonijah's terse affirmation 'peace' (= 'I come peaceably'), masking the dangerous request to follow.

14 λόγος μοι πρὸς σέ καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ λάλησον

'I have a word for you.' And she said to him, 'Speak.'

Direct speech: the preface to the request (dialogue continued) **λόγος μοι πρὸς σέ**

Adonijah's verbless clause λόγος μοι πρὸς σέ ('a word [is] to me for you' = 'I have something to say to you') is a polite request for audience; Bathsheba's single imperative λάλησον ('speak') grants it. The clipped exchange maintains narrative tension before the substance is disclosed in v. 16–17.

λόγος

a word / matter

Nominative

subject of the verbless clause

→ participant prominence

λόγος: 'word / matter / thing to say'; the verbless 'a word is to me for you' (Hebraism, לִי לְךָ דָּבָר = 'I have something to ask of you.')

μοι

to me / I have

Dative

dative of possession

→ participant reference or interest

ἐγώ: dative of possession ('a word is to me' = 'I have a word').

πρὸς

for / to

preposition + accusative (direction of speech)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'for'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction of speech).

σέ

you

Accusative

accusative object of πρὸς

→ participant reference

σύ: emphatic accusative 'you' — the addressee of the request.

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν
she said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Bathsheba's permission to speak.

αὐτῷ
to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

λάλησον
speak

Aor Act Impv 2 Sg · λαλέω

main verb (imperative)

→ ingressive aorist imperative ('begin to speak')

λαλέω: 'speak'; the aorist imperative grants Adonijah leave to state his request.

15 καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ σὺ οἶδας ὅτι ἐμοὶ ἦν ἡ βασιλεία καὶ ἐπ' ἐμὲ ἔθετο πᾶς Ἰσραὴλ τὸ πρόσωπον αὐτοῦ εἰς βασιλέα καὶ ἐστράφη ἡ βασιλεία καὶ ἐγενήθη τῷ ἀδελφῷ μου ὅτι παρὰ κυρίου ἐγένετο αὐτῷ

And he said to her, 'You know that the kingdom was mine, and all Israel had set its face on me to be king; but the kingdom was turned about and became my brother's, for it came to him from the LORD.'

Direct speech: Adonijah's apology (preamble to the request) καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ σὺ οἶδας

Adonijah frames his appeal with a claim of thwarted right: the kingdom 'was mine' and 'all Israel' looked to him, yet 'it was turned about' (ἐστράφη) to Solomon. The concluding theological concession ὅτι παρὰ κυρίου ἐγένετο αὐτῷ ('for it came to him from the LORD') appears pious but underscores his lingering sense of grievance — the rhetorical ground for the dangerous request that Abishag be given him.

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν
he said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Adonijah's apology.

αὐτῇ
to her

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῇ: meaning 'to her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

σὺ
you

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun)

→ participant reference

σύ: emphatic 'you (yourself) know' — appealing to Bathsheba as witness to his thwarted claim.

οἶδας

know

Perf Act Indic 2 Sg · οἶδα

main verb (perfect with present sense)

→ stative perfect (settled knowledge)

οἶδα: 'know' (perfect with present meaning); appeals to shared, established knowledge of the recent succession crisis.

ὅτι

that

conjunction (introducing content clause)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'that'; introduces the object clause of οἶδας.

ἐμοὶ

to me / mine

Dative

dative of possession (fronted for emphasis)

→ participant reference or interest

ἐγώ: emphatic dative of possession 'the kingdom was mine' — Adonijah asserts a prior right.

ἦν

was

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

copula (existence/possession)

→ imperfect (the kingdom 'belonged' to him)

εἰμί: 'be'; with the dative ἐμοί expresses possession ('was mine').

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεία

kingdom / kingship

Nominative

subject of ἦν

→ participant prominence

βασιλεία: 'kingdom / kingship'; the throne Adonijah claims was rightfully his as elder son.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐπὶ

on / toward

preposition + accusative (elided; with πρόσωπον idiom)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + accusative: 'on / upon'; in the idiom 'set the face on someone' = look to as leader.

ἐμέ

me

Accusative

accusative object of ἐπὶ

→ participant reference

ἐγώ: emphatic accusative; 'all Israel set its face on me.'

ἔθετο

set / fixed

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · τίθημι

main verb

→ constative aorist

τίθημι (mid.): 'set / place / fix'; with πρόσωπον forms the Hebraism 'set one's face' (סָבַח פָּנָיו) = direct one's expectation/allegiance toward.

πᾶς

all

Nominative

adjective (modifying Ἰσραηλ)

→ participant prominence

πᾶς: 'all'; 'all Israel' — Adonijah's exaggerated claim of universal support (cf. ch. 1, where only part backed him).

Ἰσραηλ

Israel

subject (indeclinable, with πᾶς)

→ participant identification

Ἰσραηλ: indeclinable; here nominative subject 'all Israel.'

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πρόσωπον

face

Accusative

direct object of ἔθετο (in the idiom 'set the face')

→ object specification

πρόσωπον: 'face'; with ἔθετο, the Hebraism 'set the face on me' (= looked to me as king).

αὐτοῦ

its / his

Genitive

genitive of possession (of 'all Israel')

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'its'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession (of 'all Israel').

εἰς

for / as

preposition + accusative (predicate goal: 'as king')

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'for / as'; 'set its face on me to be king' (εἰς βασιλέα = as/for king).

βασιλέα

king

Accusative

accusative (predicate goal with εἰς)

→ object specification

βασιλεύς: 'king'; the office Adonijah claims Israel intended for him.

καὶ

and / but

coordinate conjunction (adversative)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐστράφη

was turned about

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · στρέφω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the reversal)

στρέφω: 'turn / turn about'; renders בָּבֶל; the passive 'the kingdom was turned about' (a divine passive) describes the reversal of fortune by which Solomon, not Adonijah, gained the throne.

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεία

kingdom

Nominative

subject of ἐστράφη

→ participant prominence

βασιλεία: 'kingdom'; the throne that 'turned' to Solomon.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐγενήθη

became

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · γίνομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

γίνομαι: 'become / come to be'; 'became my brother's' = passed into Solomon's possession.

τῷ

to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἀδελφῷ

brother

Dative

dative of possession (with ἐγενήθη)

→ sphere or reference

ἀδελφός: 'brother'; 'my brother' = Solomon; the dative marks the new possessor of the kingdom.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; introduces the theological concession explaining the reversal.

παρά

from

preposition + genitive (source)

→ spatial or relational framing

παρά + genitive: 'from (the side of)'; 'from the LORD' marks divine origin.

κυρίου

the LORD

Genitive

genitive of source (with παρά)

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; Adonijah concedes (whether sincerely or rhetorically) that Solomon's kingship is divinely given.

ἐγένετο

it came / became

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · γίνομαι

verb of causal clause

→ constative aorist

γίνομαι: 'come to be / happen'; 'it came to him from the LORD' — the kingdom's transfer is attributed to YHWH (cf. v. 24).

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative of advantage (to Solomon)

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative of advantage (to Solomon).

16 καὶ νῦν αἴτησιν μίαν ἐγὼ αἰτοῦμαι παρὰ σοῦ μὴ ἀποστρέψης τὸ πρόσωπόν σου καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ Βηρσαβεε
λάλει

And now I ask one request of you; do not turn away your face.' And Bathsheba said to him, 'Speak.'

Direct speech: the formal petition (transition to the ask) καὶ νῦν

The transitional καὶ νῦν ('and now') moves from preamble to petition. The cognate construction αἴτησιν ... αἰτοῦμαι ('I ask a request') is a Hebraism; the plea μὴ ἀποστρέψης τὸ πρόσωπόν σου ('do not turn away your face') is the conventional language of supplication (= do not refuse), recurring in Solomon's own words at v. 20. Bathsheba's λάλει grants the hearing.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction (with νῦν, transitional)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

νῦν

now

temporal adverb (discourse transition)

→ adverbial qualification

νῦν: 'now'; καὶ νῦν ('and now', הַעַתָּה) is the standard Hebraizing transition from preamble to the main point of a speech.

αἴτησιν

request / petition

Accusative

cognate accusative (object of αἰτοῦμαι)

→ object specification

αἴτησις: 'request / petition'; the cognate accusative with αἰτοῦμαι ('I ask a request', תְּחִלָּה הָאֵלֹהִים שָׁאַל) is a Hebraism emphasizing the single, specific nature of the petition.

μίαν

one

Accusative

numeral (modifying αἴτησιν)

→ measure or count

εἷς, μία: 'one'; 'one request' stresses the modesty of the ask — a rhetorical device to lower resistance.

ἐγώ

I

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun)

→ participant reference

ἐγώ: emphatic 'I' — Adonijah personalizes the petition.

αἰτοῦμαι

I ask / request

Pres Mid Indic 1 Sg · αἰτέω

main verb

→ present (the act of petitioning)

αἰτέω (mid.): 'ask / request for oneself'; the middle voice fits a petition made on one's own behalf.

παρά

of / from

preposition + genitive (source of request)

→ spatial or relational framing

παρά + genitive: 'from'; 'I ask from you' — Bathsheba as the one petitioned.

σοῦ

you

Genitive

genitive object of παρά

→ relational specification

σοῦ: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive object of παρά.

μή

not

negative particle (prohibitive, with subjunctive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

μή: prohibitive negative with the aorist subjunctive ἀποστρέψης ('do not turn away').

ἀποστρέψης

turn away / refuse

Aor Act Subj 2 Sg · ἀποστρέφω

prohibitive subjunctive (μή + aor. subj.)

→ prohibitive aorist subjunctive (entreaty not to refuse)

ἀποστρέφω: 'turn away / turn back'; with πρόσωπον the idiom 'turn away the face' = refuse/reject a petition (Hebraism, הִשָּׁבֵחַ); recurs at v. 20.

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πρόσωπόν

face

Accusative

direct object of ἀποστρέψης (in the refusal-idiom)

→ object specification

πρόσωπον: 'face'; 'turn away the face' = deny the request; the petitioner asks not to be rebuffed.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Bathsheba's reply granting the hearing.

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

Βηρσαβее

Bathsheba

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Βηρσαβее: indeclinable; the queen mother, here named as speaker.

λάλει

speak

Pres Act Impv 2 Sg · λαλέω

main verb (imperative)

→ present imperative (general 'go on, speak')

λαλέω: 'speak'; the present imperative λάλει ('speak on / keep speaking') invites Adonijah to state the petition fully.

17 καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ εἰπὸν δὴ πρὸς Σαλωμων τὸν βασιλέα ὅτι οὐκ ἀποστρέψει τὸ πρόσωπον αὐτοῦ ἀπὸ σοῦ καὶ δώσει μοι τὴν Αβισακ τὴν Σωμανῖτιν εἰς γυναῖκα

And he said to her, 'Speak, please, to Solomon the king — for he will not turn his face away from you — that he give me Abishag the Shunammite as wife.'

Direct speech: the substance of the request (the fatal ask)

καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ εἰπὸν δὴ

Adonijah names his request: Abishag the Shunammite (David's last nurse-companion, 1:1–4). In the ancient Near East possession of a king's concubine implied a claim on the throne (cf. Absalom, 2 Sam 16:21–22), so the seemingly modest petition is politically explosive. The polite particle δὴ ('please') and the confident aside 'he will not turn his face from you' show Adonijah counting on the queen mother's influence.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

he said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces the substance of Adonijah's request.

αὐτῇ

to her

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῇ: meaning 'to her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

εἰπὼν

speak / say

Aor Act Impv 2 Sg · λέγω

main verb (imperative, request)

→ aorist imperative (specific entreaty)

λέγω: the aorist imperative εἰπὼν ('say / speak') asks Bathsheba to relay the petition to Solomon.

δὴ

please / now

entreaty particle (softening the imperative)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

δὴ: emphatic/entreaty particle (renders ἵ); softens the imperative to a polite 'please!'

πρὸς

to

preposition + accusative (direction of speech)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction of speech).

Σαλωμων

Solomon

accusative object of πρὸς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the king to whom Bathsheba is to speak.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (in apposition to Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλέα

king

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Σαλωμων

→ object specification

βασιλεύς: 'king'; 'Solomon the king' — emphasizing the royal authority that alone can grant the request.

ὅτι

for / that

conjunction (here causal/parenthetical: 'for')

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: here introducing the confident parenthesis 'for he will not refuse you.'

οὐκ

not

negative particle (with future)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of the future ἀποστρέψει.

ἀποστρέψει

he will turn away / refuse

Fut Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποστρέφω

main verb (predictive future)

→ predictive future (Adonijah's confident expectation)

ἀποστρέφω: 'turn away'; with πρόσωπον, the refusal-idiom (cf. v. 16); Adonijah is sure Solomon will not deny the queen mother.

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πρόσωπον

face

Accusative

direct object of ἀποστρέψει (refusal-idiom)

→ object specification

πρόσωπον: 'face'; 'turn away the face from you' = refuse you.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἀπὸ

from

preposition + genitive (separation)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀπὸ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (separation).

σοῦ

you

Genitive

genitive object of ἀπό

→ relational specification

σοῦ: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive object of ἀπό.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

δώσει

he will give

Fut Act Indic 3 Sg · δίδωμι

main verb (predictive future, content of request)

→ predictive future (the hoped-for grant)

δίδωμι: 'give'; 'he will give me Abishag' — the substance of the request, framed as confident expectation.

μοι

to me

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

μοι: meaning 'to me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

τήν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Αβισακ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τήν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αβισακ

Abishag

direct object of δώσει (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Αβισακ: transliteration of אֲבִישָׁג (Abishag); indeclinable; David's young attendant in his old age (1:1–4); possession of her implies a claim on David's royal estate.

τήν

the

Accusative

article (with gentilic Σωμανίτιν)

→ noun-phrase marking

τήν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σωμανίτιν

the Shunammite

Accusative

accusative attributive (gentilic, modifying Αβισακ)

→ object specification

Σωμανίτις: 'Shunammite'; feminine gentilic from Shunem (שֻׁנֶם); declinable (acc. -ιν); identifies Abishag's town in Issachar.

εἰς

for / as

preposition + accusative (predicate goal: 'as wife')

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'for / as'; εἰς γυναῖκα ('as wife') is the
Hebraism נָשָׂא for taking in marriage.

γυναῖκα

wife

Accusative

accusative (predicate goal with εἰς)

→ object specification

γυνή: 'woman / wife'; 'as wife' — the
marriage Adonijah seeks, which Solomon
will read as a renewed bid for the throne.

18 καὶ εἶπεν Βηρσαβεε καλῶς ἐγὼ λαλήσω περὶ σοῦ τῷ βασιλεῖ

And Bathsheba said, 'Well; I will speak for you to the king.'

Direct speech: Bathsheba's consent (brief assent)

καὶ εἶπεν Βηρσαβεε καλῶς

Bathsheba consents with a single approving adverb καλῶς ('well / very well') and a promise of advocacy. Whether she perceives the political danger is left ambiguous; the brevity propels the narrative to the throne-room scene of v. 19.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle
linking this unit with the surrounding
discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Bathsheba's consent.

Βηρσαβεε

Bathsheba

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Βηρσαβεε: indeclinable; the queen mother,
agreeing to advocate.

καλῶς

well / very well

adverb (assent particle)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καλῶς: 'well / good'; here an interjection
of assent ('very well / all right'), rendering
כֵּן.

ἐγὼ

I

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun)

→ participant reference

ἐγὼ: emphatic 'I myself will speak.'

λαλήσω

I will speak

Fut Act Indic 1 Sg · λαλέω

main verb (predictive/promissory future)

→ promissory future (pledge to advocate)

λαλέω: 'speak'; 'I will speak for you to the king' — Bathsheba's pledge of intercession.

περὶ

concerning / for

preposition + genitive (advocacy: 'on behalf of')

→ spatial or relational framing

περί + genitive: 'concerning / on behalf of'; here 'for you.'

σοῦ

you

Genitive

genitive object of περί

→ relational specification

σοῦ: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive object of περί.

τῷ

to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεῖ

king

Dative

dative indirect object (recipient of the speech)

→ sphere or reference

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon, to whom Bathsheba will convey the request.

19 καὶ εἰσῆλθεν Βηρσαβεε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Σαλωμων λαλήσαι αὐτῷ περὶ Αδωνιου καὶ ἔξανέστη ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς ἀπαντὴν αὐτῇ καὶ κατεφίλησεν αὐτὴν καὶ ἐκάθισεν ἐπὶ τοῦ θρόνου αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐτέθη θρόνος τῇ μητρὶ τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ ἐκάθισεν ἐκ δεξιῶν αὐτοῦ

And Bathsheba went in to King Solomon to speak to him about Adonijah. And the king rose to meet her and kissed her and sat upon his throne, and a throne was set for the mother of the king, and she sat at his right hand.

Narrative: the throne-room reception (honor shown the queen mother)

καὶ εἰσῆλθεν Βηρσαβεε

The scene shifts to the throne room. Solomon's extraordinary courtesies — rising, kissing, and seating his mother on a throne at his right hand (ἐκ δεξιῶν αὐτοῦ) — display the honored office of the gēbîrâ (queen mother) and lull the reader into expecting the request will be granted, sharpening the reversal at v. 22. The right hand is the place of highest honor (cf. Ps 110:1).

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἰσῆλθεν
went in

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰσέρχομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

εἰσέρχομαι: 'enter / go in'; Bathsheba enters the royal presence to make her plea.

Βηρσαβее
Bathsheba

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Βηρσαβее: indeclinable; the queen mother.

πρὸς
to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

τὸν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλέα
king

Accusative

accusative object of πρὸς

→ object specification

βασιλεύς: 'king'; Solomon, the object of the visit.

Σαλωμων
Solomon

accusative in apposition to βασιλέα (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; in apposition 'King Solomon.'

λαλῆσαι
to speak

Aor Act Inf · λαλέω

infinitive of purpose

→ aorist infinitive

λαλέω: the infinitive of purpose 'to speak to him about Adonijah' states Bathsheba's errand.

αὐτῷ
to him

Dative

dative indirect object (of λαλῆσαι)

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object (of λαλῆσαι).

περὶ
about / concerning

preposition + genitive (topic)

→ spatial or relational framing

περὶ: meaning 'about'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (topic).

Αδωνιου
Adonijah

Genitive

genitive object of περί

→ relational specification

Αδωνιας: declined here in the genitive (Αδωνιου); the topic of Bathsheba's intercession.

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐξάνεστη

rose up

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἐξάνιστημι

main verb

→ constative aorist (act of honor)

ἐξάνιστημι: 'rise up / stand up'; renders נִשְׁתָּה ; the king's rising to meet his mother is an extraordinary mark of filial honor for the queen mother.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon rising in honor.

εἰς

to / for

preposition + accusative (purpose: 'to meet')

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: with ἀπαντήν, 'to meet'.

ἀπαντήν

a meeting

Accusative

accusative (with εἰς: 'to meet her')

→ object specification

ἀπάντησις/ἀπαντή: 'meeting'; εἰς ἀπαντήν ('to meet'), Hebraism rendering לִפְנֵי .

αὐτῇ

her

Dative

dative (object of the meeting-idiom)

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῇ: meaning 'her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative (object of the meeting-idiom).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

κατεφίλησεν

kissed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · καταφιλέω

main verb

→ constative aorist (gesture of affection/honor)

καταφιλέω: 'kiss (warmly) / kiss down'; the intensive compound renders רַחֵם ; an affectionate filial gesture of honor.

αὐτήν

her

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτήν: meaning 'her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐκάθισεν

he sat

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · καθίζω

main verb

→ constative aorist

καθίζω: 'sit down'; the king resumes his throne.

ἐπὶ

upon

preposition + genitive (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπὶ: meaning 'upon'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (position).

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θρόνου

throne

Genitive

genitive object of ἐπί

→ relational specification

θρόνος: 'throne'; the king's seat.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐτέθη

was set / placed

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · τίθημι

main verb (passive)

→ constative aorist

τίθημι: 'place / set'; the passive 'a throne was set' for the queen mother signals her honored co-regnal status.

θρόνος

a throne

Nominative

subject of ἐτέθη

→ participant prominence

θρόνος: 'throne / seat of honor'; a second throne for the gēbîrâ underscores her dignity.

τῇ

for the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

μητρί

mother

Dative

dative of advantage (for whom the throne is set)

→ sphere or reference

μήτηρ: 'mother'; the queen mother for whom the throne is placed.

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλέως

king

Genitive

genitive of relationship ('mother of the king')

→ relational specification

βασιλεύς: 'king'; 'the mother of the king' = Bathsheba in her official capacity.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐκάθισεν

she sat

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · καθίζω

main verb

→ constative aorist

καθίζω: 'sit'; Bathsheba takes her seat of honor.

ἐκ

at / on

preposition + genitive (position: 'at the right')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐκ + genitive: in the idiom ἐκ δεξιῶν ('on/at the right hand'), the place of highest honor.

δεξιῶν

right hand

Genitive

genitive of place (with ἐκ)

→ relational specification

δεξιός: 'right (hand/side)'; ἐκ δεξιῶν ('at the right hand') marks the position of supreme honor beside the king (cf. Ps 110:1).

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

20 καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ αἴτησιν μίαν μικράν ἐγὼ αἰτοῦμαι παρὰ σοῦ μὴ ἀποστρέψης τὸ πρόσωπόν σου καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ ὁ βασιλεύς αἴτησαι μήτερ ἐμή ὅτι οὐκ ἀποστρέψω σε

And she said to him, 'I ask one small request of you; do not turn away your face.' And the king said to her, 'Ask, my mother, for I will not turn you away.'

Direct speech: Bathsheba's petition and Solomon's open-handed promise

καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ

Bathsheba echoes Adonijah's own wording (αἴτησιν ... αἰτοῦμαι ... μὴ ἀποστρέψης, v. 16), now adding μικράν ('small') to minimize it. Solomon's warm αἴτησαι μήτερ ἐμή ('ask, my mother') and his unconditional pledge οὐκ ἀποστρέψω σε ('I will not turn you away') maximize the reversal when, on hearing the actual request, he reacts with fury (v. 22). The king commits before knowing the content — classic narrative entrapment.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Bathsheba's petition.

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

αἴτησιν

request

Accusative

cognate accusative (object of αἰτοῦμαι)

→ object specification

αἴτησις: 'request'; the cognate accusative echoes Adonijah's wording of v. 16.

μία

one

Accusative

numeral (modifying αἴτησιν)

→ measure or count

εἷς, μία: 'one'; 'one request' — minimizing rhetoric.

μικράν

small / little

Accusative

attributive adjective (modifying αἴτησιν)

→ object specification

μικρός: 'small / little'; renders תַּבַּיִת; Bathsheba downplays the request as trivial — heightening the irony of Solomon's violent reaction (v. 22).

ἐγώ

I

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun)

→ participant reference

ἐγώ: emphatic 'I ask.'

αἰτοῦμαι

I ask

Pres Mid Indic 1 Sg · αἰτέω

main verb

→ present (the petition)

αἰτέω (mid.): 'request for oneself'; the middle of personal petition.

παρά

of / from

preposition + genitive (source)

→ spatial or relational framing

παρά: meaning 'of'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (source).

σοῦ

you

Genitive

genitive object of παρά

→ relational specification

σοῦ: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive object of παρά.

μή

not

negative particle (prohibitive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

μή: prohibitive with the aorist subjunctive.

ἀποστρέψης

turn away / refuse

Aor Act Subj 2 Sg · ἀποστρέφω

prohibitive subjunctive (μή + aor. subj.)

→ prohibitive aorist subjunctive (entreaty)

ἀποστρέφω: 'turn away'; the refusal-idiom (v. 16); Bathsheba pleads not to be rebuffed.

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πρόσωπόν

face

Accusative

direct object of ἀποστρέψης (refusal-idiom)

→ object specification

πρόσωπον: 'face'; 'turn away the face' = refuse.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Solomon's open-handed reply.

αὐτῇ

to her

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῇ: meaning 'to her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεύς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεύς: 'king'; Solomon.

αἶτησαι

ask

Aor Mid Impv 2 Sg · αἰτέω

main verb (imperative)

→ aorist imperative (open invitation)

αἰτέω (mid.): 'ask'; the middle imperative αἶτησαι ('ask [for yourself]') warmly invites the petition — before Solomon learns its content.

μητέρα

mother

Vocative

vocative (direct address)

→ direct address

μήτηρ: 'mother'; the vocative μητέρα with ἐμή ('my mother') is affectionate and honoring.

ἐμή

my

Vocative

possessive adjective (with μητέρα)

→ direct address

ἐμός: 'my'; the possessive heightens the warmth of address, sharpening the coming reversal.

ὅτι

for

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'for / because'; grounds the invitation in the pledge that follows.

οὐκ

not

negative particle (with future)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of ἀποστρέψω.

ἀποστρέψω

I will turn away / refuse

Fut Act Indic 1 Sg · ἀποστρέφω

main verb (predictive/promissory future)

→ promissory future (unconditional pledge)

ἀποστρέφω: 'turn away / refuse'; Solomon's rash unconditional promise 'I will not turn you away' — given before he knows the request — sets the trap that springs in v. 22.

σε

you

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

σε: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

21 καὶ εἶπεν δοθήτω δὲ Αβισακ ἡ Σωμανῖτις τῷ Αδωνια τῷ ἀδελφῷ σου εἰς γυναῖκα

And she said, 'Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah your brother as wife.'

Direct speech: the request stated plainly (the trap sprung)

καὶ εἶπεν δοθήτω

Bathsheba states the petition with a third-person passive imperative δοθήτω ('let her be given'), a deferential way of asking. The naming of 'Adonijah your brother' inadvertently underscores the dynastic threat: a living elder brother claiming a royal woman. The verse is the hinge on which Solomon's warm welcome turns to lethal suspicion.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces the plainly stated request.

δοθήτω

let her be given

Aor Pass Impv 3 Sg · δίδωμι

main verb (third-person passive imperative)

→ aorist passive imperative (deferential request)

δίδωμι: 'give'; the third-person passive imperative δοθήτω ('let her be given') is a deferential, indirect way of asking — softening the politically charged petition.

δὲ

now / and

narrative continuative (post-positive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

δὲ: post-positive connective marking the substance of the request.

Αβισακ

Abishag

subject of δοθήτω (indeclinable, marked by article ἡ)

→ noun-phrase marking

Αβισακ: indeclinable; David's Shunammite attendant, the subject of the request.

ἡ

the

Nominative

article (with gentilic Σωμανῖτις)

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σωμανῖτις

the Shunammite

Nominative

nominative attributive (gentilic, modifying Αβισακ)

→ participant prominence

Σωμανῖτις: 'Shunammite'; feminine gentilic; identifies Abishag (cf. v. 17).

τῷ

to

Dative

article (with Αδωνια)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αδωνια

Adonijah

Dative

dative indirect object (recipient)

→ sphere or reference

Αδωνιας; declined here in the dative (Αδωνια); the intended recipient of Abishag.

τῷ

the

Dative

article (in apposition to Αδωνια)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἀδελφῷ

brother

Dative

dative in apposition to Αδωνια

→ sphere or reference

ἀδελφός: 'brother'; 'your brother' — the very designation that, to Solomon's ear, transforms the request into a dynastic threat.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

εἰς

for / as

preposition + accusative (predicate goal)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'as'; εἰς γυναῖκα ('as wife'), Hebraism ἡ ψηλῇ.

γυναῖκα

wife

Accusative

accusative (predicate goal with εἰς)

→ object specification

γυνή: 'wife'; the marriage requested for Adonijah.

22 καὶ ἀπεκρίθη Σαλωμων ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ εἶπεν τῇ μητρὶ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἵνα τί σὺ ᾔτησαι τὴν Αβισακ τῷ Αδωνια καὶ αἵτησαι αὐτῷ τὴν βασιλείαν ὅτι οὗτος ἀδελφός μου ὁ μέγας ὑπὲρ ἐμέ καὶ αὐτῷ Αβιαθαρ ὁ ἱερεὺς καὶ αὐτῷ Ιωαβ ὁ υἱὸς Σαρουιας ὁ ἀρχιστράτηγος ἐταῖρος

And King Solomon answered and said to his mother, 'And why do you ask Abishag for Adonijah? Ask the kingdom for him too! For he is my elder brother, and Abiathar the priest is on his side, and Joab son of Zeruiah, the commander-in-chief, is his comrade.'

Direct speech: Solomon's furious counter (the request unmasked) καὶ ἀπεκρίθη Σαλωμων

Solomon explodes the request's hidden meaning. The indignant ἵνα τί ('why?') and the sarcastic αἵτησαι αὐτῷ τὴν βασιλείαν ('ask the kingdom for him too!') equate the request for Abishag with a bid for the throne. He names Adonijah's powerful backers — Abiathar the priest and Joab the commander-in-chief — exposing a coalition; this list directly motivates the purges of vv. 26–27 (Abiathar) and 28–34 (Joab).

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπεκρίθη
answered

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · ἀποκρίνομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀποκρίνομαι: 'answer / reply'; renders ἵπν; the deponent-passive form is standard; with εἶπεν forms the Hebraizing 'answered and said.'

Σαλωμων
Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the king.

ὁ
the

Nominative

article (in apposition to Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

nominative in apposition ('Solomon the king')

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; the royal title underscores that Solomon now responds in his official capacity as judge.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction (in 'answered and said')

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: completes the 'answered and said' formula.

τῇ

to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

μητρὶ

mother

Dative

dative indirect object

→ sphere or reference

μήτηρ: 'mother'; Bathsheba, the addressee.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction (introducing the indignant question)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἵνα

why

interrogative (with τί: 'to what end? / why?')

→ clausal contribution

ἵνα: in the idiom ἵνα τί ('for what purpose? / why?'), an indignant interrogative rendering ἡβή.

τί

what

Accusative

interrogative pronoun (with ἵνα)

→ participant reference

τίς: interrogative; ἵνα τί ('why?') opens Solomon's indignant rejoinder.

σὺ

you

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun)

→ participant reference

σὺ: emphatic 'you' — Solomon's astonishment that his own mother makes such a request.

ἤτησαι

do you ask

Perf Mid Indic 2 Sg · αἰτέω

main verb (perfect with present/recent force)

→ perfect (the request as a completed act with present bearing)

αἰτέω (mid.): 'ask'; the middle perfect ἤτησαι ('you have asked / you ask') treats the petition as a just-completed act whose import Solomon now unmasks.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Αβισακ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αβισακ

Abishag

direct object of ἤτησαι (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Αβισακ: indeclinable; the requested woman.

τῷ

for

Dative

article (with Ἀδωνια)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Ἀδωνια

Adonijah

Dative

dative of advantage ('for Adonijah')

→ sphere or reference

Ἀδωνιας: dative (Ἀδωνια); 'for Adonijah' — the beneficiary Solomon now treats as a rival.

καὶ

and / too

coordinate conjunction (escalating sarcasm)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αἶτησαι

ask

Aor Mid Impv 2 Sg · αἰτέω

main verb (sarcastic imperative)

→ aorist imperative (bitter irony)

αἰτέω (mid.): 'ask'; the sarcastic imperative 'ask the kingdom for him too!' equates the request for Abishag with seeking the throne itself.

αὐτῷ

for him

Dative

dative of advantage

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'for him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative of advantage.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλείαν

kingdom / kingship

Accusative

direct object of αἶτησαι

→ object specification

βασιλεία: 'kingdom / kingship'; the climactic sarcasm — Abishag = the kingdom; possession of the royal woman is tantamount to a throne-claim.

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; grounds the suspicion in Adonijah's seniority and powerful allies.

οὗτος

this one / he

Nominative

demonstrative pronoun (subject)

→ participant reference

οὗτος: 'this one'; here 'he (is) my elder brother' — the demonstrative carries a dismissive edge.

ἀδελφός

brother

Nominative

predicate nominative

→ participant prominence

ἀδελφός: 'brother'; 'my elder brother' — Adonijah's seniority gives his claim dangerous plausibility.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article (with adjective μέγας)

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

μέγας

elder / greater

Nominative

attributive adjective ('the elder')

→ participant prominence

μέγας: 'great / elder'; ὁ μέγας ('the great/elder one') = senior in age; renders לִדְאִן, the elder son with prior claim.

ὑπὲρ

above / than

preposition + accusative (comparison)

→ spatial or relational framing

ὑπὲρ + accusative: 'above / more than'; comparative 'greater/elder than me.'

ἐμέ

me

Accusative

accusative of comparison (with ὑπὲρ)

→ participant reference

ἐγώ: emphatic accusative; 'older than I' — acknowledging Adonijah's seniority as the heart of the threat.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αὐτῷ

on his side / with him

Dative

dative of association (verbless: 'with him / on his side')

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτός: dative of association; 'and with him (are) Abiathar ... and Joab' — naming Adonijah's faction.

Αβιαθαρ

Abiathar

subject of verbless clause (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Αβιαθαρ: transliteration of אֲבִיָּאֲתָר (Abiathar); indeclinable; the priest who supported Adonijah (1:7), here named as a co-conspirator — leading to his deposition (vv. 26–27).

ὁ

the

Nominative

article (with ἱερεὺς)

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἱερεὺς

priest

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Αβιαθαρ

→ participant prominence

ἱερεὺς: 'priest'; renders כֹּהֵן; Abiathar's priestly office made his political backing of Adonijah especially weighty.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αὐτῷ

with him / his

Dative

dative of association

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτός: dative of association; introducing the second named ally, Joab.

Ιωαβ

Joab

subject of verbless clause (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: indeclinable; the army commander who also backed Adonijah (1:7), named here — leading to his death (vv. 28–34).

ὁ the Nominative article → noun-phrase marking ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.	υἱὸς son Nominative nominative in apposition to Ἰωαβ → participant prominence υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Zeruiah.'	Σαρουίας of Zeruiah Genitive genitive of relationship → relational specification Σαρουία: Zeruiah, David's sister; genitive Σαρουίας; the matronymic for Joab.	ὁ the Nominative article (with ἀρχιστράτηγος) → noun-phrase marking ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.
ἀρχιστράτηγος commander-in-chief Nominative nominative in apposition to Ἰωαβ → participant prominence ἀρχιστράτηγος: 'commander-in-chief / chief of the army'; renders מִצַּחֵרֶשֶׁת; Joab's office over Israel's army made his support a grave military threat.	ἐταῖρος comrade / companion Nominative predicate nominative (Joab as Adonijah's 'comrade') → participant prominence ἐταῖρος: 'comrade / companion / partisan'; underscores Joab's personal alliance with Adonijah — the political faction Solomon must dismantle.		

23 καὶ ὥμοσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς Σαλωμων κατὰ τοῦ κυρίου λέγων τάδε ποιῆσαι μοι ὁ θεὸς καὶ τάδε προσθεῖη ὅτι κατὰ τῆς ψυχῆς αὐτοῦ ἐλάλησεν Αδωνιας τὸν λόγον τοῦτον

And King Solomon swore by the LORD, saying, 'May God do thus to me, and thus may he add, for Adonijah has spoken this word against his own life!'

Direct speech: Solomon's self-imprecatory oath (verdict pronounced)

καὶ ὥμοσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς Σαλωμων

Solomon seals Adonijah's fate with the conventional self-imprecation formula τάδε ποιῆσαι μοι ὁ θεὸς καὶ τάδε προσθεῖη ('may God do so to me and more also'), the standard biblical oath (cf. Ruth 1:17; 1 Sam 3:17). The ὅτι-clause states the ground: by asking for Abishag, Adonijah 'has spoken against his own life' — i.e., self-condemned. The oath 'by the LORD' makes the verdict irrevocable.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὤμοσεν

swore

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ὤμνυμι

main verb

→ constative aorist (the binding oath)

ὤμνυμι: 'swear'; renders נִשְׁבַּע; Solomon's oath makes Adonijah's death-sentence irrevocable.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon acting judicially.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

nominative in apposition to βασιλεὺς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; 'King Solomon.'

κατὰ

by

preposition + genitive (oath-formula: 'swear by')

→ spatial or relational framing

κατὰ + genitive: in oaths 'by / against'; 'swear by the LORD' (בַּיְהוָה נִשְׁבַּע).

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίου

the LORD

Genitive

genitive (object of κατὰ: oath sworn by YHWH)

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יְהוָה; the oath 'by the LORD' invokes God as guarantor and avenger.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing, Hebraism)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: λέγων introduces the oath's content, calquing נֹאמַר.

τάδε

thus / these things

Accusative

demonstrative pronoun (object of ποιήσαι)

→ participant reference

ὅδε: 'this'; in the oath-formula τάδε ποιήσαι ('may [God] do thus'), the demonstrative gestures vaguely at unstated punishment — a self-curse.

ποιήσαι

may he do

Aor Act Opt 3 Sg · ποιέω

main verb (optative of wish in the oath-formula)

→ optative of wish (self-imprecation)

ποιέω: 'do'; the aorist optative ποιήσαι ('may he do') in the self-imprecatory oath-formula 'may God do so to me and more' (כִּהַּ יַעֲשֶׂה לִּי אֱלֹהִים, cf. Ruth 1:17; 1 Sam 3:17).

μοι

to me

Dative

dative of disadvantage (the self-curse)

→ participant reference or interest

μοι: meaning 'to me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative of disadvantage (the self-curse).

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θεός

God

Nominative

subject of ποιῆσαι

→ participant prominence

θεός: 'God'; renders **יְהוָה**; invoked as the executor of the self-curse should Solomon fail to act.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τάδε

thus / more

Accusative

demonstrative pronoun (object of προσθείη)

→ participant reference

ὅδε: 'this'; the second τάδε in 'and so may he add (more)' intensifies the self-imprecation.

προσθείη

may he add

Aor Act Opt 3 Sg · προστίθῃμι

main verb (optative of wish)

→ optative of wish (intensifying the oath)

προστίθῃμι: 'add / increase'; the optative προσθείη ('may he add') completes the formula 'may God do so to me and more also' (**יְהוָה יוֹסֵף**), heightening the gravity of the oath.

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; states the ground of the oath.

κατὰ

against

preposition + genitive (hostile: 'against')

→ spatial or relational framing

κατὰ + genitive: 'against'; 'against his own life' — the request is self-incriminating.

τῆς

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ψυχῆς

life / soul

Genitive

genitive object of κατὰ

→ relational specification

ψυχῆ: 'life / soul / self'; renders **נַפְשׁוֹ**; 'spoke against his own life' = his request amounts to self-condemnation, a capital offense.

αὐτοῦ

his own

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his own'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἐλάλησεν

has spoken

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λαλέω

verb of causal clause

→ constative aorist

λαλέω: 'speak'; Adonijah's speaking the request is construed as a capital act against himself.

Αδωνιας

Adonijah

Nominative

subject of ἐλάλησεν

→ participant prominence

Αδωνιας: nominative (declined -ας); the self-condemned petitioner.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

λόγον

word

Accusative

direct object of ἐλάλησεν

→ object specification

λόγος: 'word / matter'; 'this word' = the fatal request for Abishag.

τοῦτον

this

Accusative

demonstrative adjective (modifying λόγον)

→ participant reference

οὗτος: 'this'; deictic pointing to the just-uttered petition.

24 καὶ νῦν ζῇ κύριος ὃς ἡτοίμασέν με καὶ ἔθετό με ἐπὶ τὸν θρόνον Δαυιδ τοῦ πατρός μου καὶ αὐτὸς ἐποίησέν μοι οἶκον καθὼς ἐλάλησεν κύριος ὅτι σήμερον θανατωθήσεται Αδωνιας

And now, as the LORD lives, who established me and set me on the throne of David my father, and who has made me a house as he promised — today Adonijah shall be put to death!

Direct speech: the death-sentence sealed by oath (the 'living-LORD' formula)

καὶ νῦν ζῇ κύριος

Solomon adds the assertory oath-formula ζῇ κύριος ('as the LORD lives', יהוה חי), grounding the sentence in YHWH's own faithfulness: the God who 'established' (ἡτοίμασεν, echoing v. 12) and 'made me a house' (the dynastic promise) is the guarantor. The triple relative description of YHWH heightens solemnity before the verdict σήμερον θανατωθήσεται Αδωνιας ('today Adonijah shall die').

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction (with νῦν, transitional)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

νῦν

now

temporal adverb (discourse transition)

→ adverbial qualification

νῦν: 'now'; καὶ νῦν moves from the oath-formula to the verdict.

ζῇ

lives

Pres Act Indic 3 Sg · ζάω

main verb (assertory oath-formula)

→ gnomic/assertory present ('as the LORD lives')

ζάω: 'live'; the formula ζῇ κύριος ('as the LORD lives', יהוה חי) is the standard biblical assertory oath, invoking the living God as witness and guarantor.

κύριος

the LORD

Nominative

subject of ζῇ

→ participant prominence

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; the living God by whom Solomon swears.

ὅς

who

Nominative

relative pronoun (subject of ἡτοιμάσεν)

→ participant reference

ὅς: relative pronoun introducing the threefold description of YHWH's faithfulness to Solomon.

ἡτοιμάσεν

established / prepared

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἐτοιμάζω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist (the past act of establishing)

ἐτοιμάζω: 'prepare / establish'; echoes ἡτοιμάσθη of v. 12 — YHWH established Solomon's kingship; the ground of the oath's authority.

με

me

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

με: meaning 'me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔθετό

set / placed

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · τίθημι

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist

τίθημι (mid.): 'set / place'; 'set me on the throne of David' — YHWH as the agent of Solomon's enthronement (cf. v. 12).

με

me

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

με: meaning 'me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

ἐπὶ

upon

preposition + accusative (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπὶ: meaning 'upon'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (position).

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θρόνον

throne

Accusative

accusative object of ἐπὶ

→ object specification

θρόνος: 'throne'; 'the throne of David my father' — the dynastic seat (cf. v. 12).

Δαυιδ

of David

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; here genitive 'of David.'

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (in apposition to Δαυιδ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πατρός

father

Genitive

genitive in apposition to Δαυιδ

→ relational specification

πατήρ: 'father'; 'David my father' — dynastic legitimacy.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αὐτός

he himself

Nominative

subject (emphatic/intensive pronoun)

→ participant reference

αὐτός: intensive 'he himself' — emphasizing YHWH's personal agency in establishing the dynasty.

ἐποίησέν

made

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ποιέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ποιέω: 'make'; 'made me a house' (הָבַח עָלַי בֵּית) = established a dynasty, fulfilling the promise of 2 Sam 7:11.

μοι

for me

Dative

dative of advantage

→ participant reference or interest

μοι: meaning 'for me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative of advantage.

οἶκον

house / dynasty

Accusative

direct object of ἐποίησεν

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house / household / dynasty'; renders הַבַּיִת; the 'house' (= enduring dynasty) promised to David (2 Sam 7), now realized in Solomon.

καθώς

as / just as

comparative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καθώς: 'just as / according as'; introduces the comparison with YHWH's promise.

ἐλάλησεν

promised / spoke

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λαλέω

verb of comparative clause

→ constative aorist

λαλέω: 'speak / promise'; 'as the LORD promised' refers to the Davidic covenant word (2 Sam 7).

κύριος

the LORD

Nominative

subject of ἐλάλησεν

→ participant prominence

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton; the promise-keeping God.

ὅτι

that / surely

conjunction (introducing the oath's apodosis/content)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: here introducing the substance sworn ('[I swear] that ... today Adonijah shall die'); functions emphatically after the oath.

σήμερον

today

temporal adverb

→ clausal contribution

σήμερον: 'today'; renders הַיּוֹם; the immediacy of execution underscores the sentence's finality.

θανατωθήσεται

shall be put to death

Fut Pass Indic 3 Sg · θανατόω

main verb (sworn verdict)

→ predictive future (the sworn death-sentence)

θανατόω: 'put to death'; the passive 'shall be put to death' is the formal verdict, executed in v. 25.

Αδωνιας

Adonijah

Nominative

subject of θανατωθήσεται

→ participant prominence

Αδωνιας: nominative (declined -ας); the condemned man.

25 καὶ ἐξαπέστειλεν Σαλωμων ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐν χειρὶ Βαναιου υἱοῦ Ἰωδαε καὶ ἀνείλεν αὐτόν καὶ ἀπέθανεν Αδωνιας ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐκείνῃ

And King Solomon sent by the hand of Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and he struck him down, and Adonijah died on that day.

Narrative: the execution carried out (verdict fulfilled)

καὶ ἐξαπέστειλεν Σαλωμων

The sentence is executed swiftly through Benaiah son of Jehoiada, Solomon's enforcer (who will also kill Joab, v. 34, and Shimei, v. 46). The Hebraism ἐν χειρὶ ('by the hand of') marks Benaiah as the king's agent. The phrase ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐκείνῃ ('on that day') fulfills Solomon's σήμερον of v. 24.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐξαπέστειλεν

sent

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἐξαποστέλλω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἐξαποστέλλω: 'send out / dispatch'; renders Πζψ; Solomon dispatches his agent to carry out the execution.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the king.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article (in apposition to Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

nominative in apposition

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; 'Solomon the king' acting with royal authority.

ἐν

by

preposition + dative (agency, Hebraism: 'by the hand of')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: instrumental 'by'; ἐν χειρί ('by the hand of', דַּבֿ) is a Hebraism marking the human agent.

χειρὶ

hand

Dative

dative of means (in the agency-idiom)

→ sphere or reference

χείρ: 'hand'; ἐν χειρί = 'by the agency of'

Βαναιου

Benaiah

Genitive

genitive (object of the agency-idiom 'hand of Benaiah')

→ relational specification

Βαναιας; transliteration of בְּנֵיָיָה (Benaiah); declined as a genitive (Βαναιου); commander of Solomon's bodyguard and chief executioner (vv. 25, 34, 46).

υἱοῦ

son

Genitive

genitive in apposition to Βαναιου

→ relational specification

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jehoiada.'

Ιωδαε

of Jehoiada

genitive of relationship (indeclinable patronymic)

→ participant identification

Ιωδαε: transliteration of יְהוֹיָדָה (Jehoiada); indeclinable; Benaiah's father, a priest.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀνείλεν

struck down / killed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀναιρέω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the killing)

ἀναιρέω: 'kill / do away with / destroy'; renders גָּזַח / גָּזַח; the standard LXX verb for judicial execution; Benaiah dispatches Adonijah.

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object (Adonijah)

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object (Adonijah).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέθανεν

died

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποθνήσκω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the death)

ἀποθνήσκω: 'die'; renders תָּמַת; confirms Adonijah's death, ending the first rival's threat.

Αδωνιας

Adonijah

Nominative

subject of ἀπέθανεν

→ participant prominence

Αδωνιας; nominative; the executed pretender.

ἐν

on

preposition + dative (temporal)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (temporal).

τῇ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέρα

day

Dative

dative of time (when)

→ sphere or reference

ἡμέρα: 'day'; 'on that day' fulfills Solomon's σήμερον ('today', v. 24).

ἐκείνη

that

Dative

demonstrative adjective (modifying ἡμέρα)

→ sphere or reference

ἐκεῖνος: 'that'; deictic 'that (very) day' of the sworn sentence.

26 καὶ τῷ Αβιαθαρ τῷ ἱερεῖ εἶπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπότρεχε σὺ εἰς Αναθωθ εἰς ἀγρόν σου ὅτι ἀνὴρ θανάτου εἶ σὺ ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ταύτῃ καὶ οὐ θανατώσω σε ὅτι ἦρας τὴν κιβωτὸν τῆς διαθήκης κυρίου ἐνώπιον τοῦ πατρὸς μου καὶ ὅτι ἐκακουχήθης ἐν ᾗπασιν οἷς ἐκακουχήθη ὁ πατήρ μου

And to Abiathar the priest the king said, 'Run off to Anathoth, to your field, for you are a man worthy of death this day; but I will not put you to death, because you bore the ark of the covenant of the LORD before my father, and because you were afflicted in all the things in which my father was afflicted.'

Direct speech: Abiathar banished (the second rival dealt with)

καὶ τῷ Αβιαθαρ τῷ ἱερεῖ εἶπεν

Solomon turns to Abiathar, Adonijah's priestly backer (v. 22). The brusque imperative ἀπότρεχε ('run off!') banishes him to his ancestral field at Anathoth. Though 'a man worthy of death' (ἀνὴρ θανάτου, a Hebraism), Abiathar is spared for two reasons of ḥesed: he carried the ark before David (cf. 2 Sam 15:24–29) and shared David's hardships. Banishment, not execution, ends his priestly career.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Αβιαθαρ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αβιαθαρ

Abiathar

dative indirect object (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Αβιαθαρ: indeclinable; the priest, Adonijah's ally, now addressed by the king.

τῷ

the

Dative

article (in apposition to Αβιαθαρ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἱερεῖ

priest

Dative

dative in apposition to Αβιαθαρ

→ sphere or reference

ἱερεὺς: 'priest'; Abiathar's office, soon stripped (v. 27).

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces the king's sentence of banishment.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεύς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεύς: 'king'; Solomon.

ἀπότρεχε

run off / go away

Pres Act Impv 2 Sg · ἀποτρέχω

main verb (imperative of banishment)

→ present imperative (command of dismissal)

ἀποτρέχω: 'run away / depart'; renders 𐤀𐤏𐤕𐤕; the brusque 'run off!' summarily banishes Abiathar from court to his rural estate.

σύ

you

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun with imperative)

→ participant reference

σύ: emphatic 'you' reinforcing the personal command.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

Αναθωθ

Anathoth

accusative of place (indeclinable place-name, with εἰς)

→ participant identification

Αναθωθ: transliteration of 𐤀𐤏𐤕𐤕 (Anathoth); indeclinable; a priestly town in Benjamin (later Jeremiah's home, Jer 1:1), Abiathar's ancestral holding.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction, in apposition)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction, in apposition).

ἀγρόν

field / estate

Accusative

accusative of place (with εἰς)

→ object specification

ἀγρός: 'field / farm / estate'; renders 𐤀𐤕𐤕; Abiathar's private landholding, to which he is confined.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; grounds the harsh dismissal in Abiathar's deserved guilt.

ἀνὴρ

a man

Nominative

predicate nominative (in 'man of death')

→ participant prominence

ἀνὴρ: 'man'; in the Hebraism ἀνὴρ θανάτου ('man of death' = one deserving death, *שׂוֹנֵא מִתּוֹכָם*).

θανάτου

of death

Genitive

genitive of quality (Hebraism: 'deserving death')

→ relational specification

θάνατος: 'death'; the genitive of quality 'man of death' (*תּוֹכָם שׂוֹנֵא*) = one liable to capital punishment.

εἶ

you are

Pres Act Indic 2 Sg · εἰμί

copula

→ stative present

εἰμί: 'be'; copula of the predicate 'you are a man of death.'

σύ

you

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun)

→ participant reference

σύ: emphatic 'you (yourself).'

ἐν

on / in

preposition + dative (temporal)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (temporal).

τῇ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέρα

day

Dative

dative of time

→ sphere or reference

ἡμέρα: 'day'; 'this day' — Abiathar is presently liable to death.

ταύτη

this

Dative

demonstrative adjective (modifying ἡμέρα)

→ participant reference or interest

οὗτος: 'this'; deictic 'this (very) day.'

καὶ

but / and

coordinate conjunction (adversative turn)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'but'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

οὐ

not

negative particle (with future)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of θανατώσω — the act of clemency.

θανατώσω

I will put to death

Fut Act Indic 1 Sg · θανατώω

main verb (negated future, clemency)

→ predictive future (negated: act of sparing)

θανατώω: 'put to death'; the negated future grants clemency: despite deserving death, Abiathar is spared for the reasons that follow.

σε

you

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

σε: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

ὅτι

because

causal conjunction (first ground of clemency)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; the first reason for sparing Abiathar.

ἦρας

you bore / carried

Aor Act Indic 2 Sg · αἶρω

verb of causal clause

→ constative aorist

αἶρω: 'lift / carry / bear'; renders אָנָּח; Abiathar bore/served the ark before David (2 Sam 15:24–29), a priestly service now invoked as grounds for mercy.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κιβωτὸν

ark

Accusative

direct object of ἦρας

→ object specification

κιβωτός: 'ark / chest'; renders אָרֹן; the ark of the covenant, whose handling by Abiathar earns him clemency.

τῆς

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

διαθήκης

covenant

Genitive

genitive of relationship ('ark of the covenant')

→ relational specification

διαθήκη: 'covenant / testament'; renders בְּרִית; 'the ark of the covenant of the LORD' is the sacred chest housing the covenant tablets.

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with διαθήκης)

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יְהוָה; 'the covenant of the LORD'

ἐνώπιον

before

preposition + genitive (Hebraism: 'in the presence of')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐνώπιον: 'before / in the presence of'; Hebraism rendering לִפְנֵי.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πατρός

father

Genitive

genitive object of ἐνώπιον

→ relational specification

πατήρ: 'father'; David, before whom Abiathar served as priest.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὅτι

because

causal conjunction (second ground of clemency)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; the second reason — shared affliction with David.

ἐκακουχήθης

you were afflicted

Aor Pass Indic 2 Sg · κακουχέω

verb of causal clause

→ constative aorist (shared past hardship)

κακουχέω: 'maltreat / afflict / cause hardship'; the passive 'you were afflicted' refers to Abiathar's sharing David's persecutions (e.g., fleeing Saul, then Absalom); a bond of loyalty that earns mercy.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (sphere)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (sphere).

ἅπασιν

all

Dative

adjective (substantival: 'in all things')

→ sphere or reference

ἅπας: 'all (together) / every'; intensive form of πᾶς; 'in all the things' in which David suffered.

οἷς

in which

Dative

relative pronoun (dative, attracted to ἅπασιν)

→ participant reference or interest

οἷς: relative pronoun, dat. neut. pl.; 'in which (things) my father was afflicted' — the case attracted to its antecedent ἅπασιν.

ἐκακουχήθη

was afflicted

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · κακουχέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist

κακουχέω: 'be afflicted'; repeated of David — Abiathar's solidarity in David's hardships grounds his pardon.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πατήρ

father

Nominative

subject of ἐκακουχήθη

→ participant prominence

πατήρ: 'father'; David, whose afflictions Abiathar shared.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

27 καὶ ἐξέβαλεν Σαλωμων τὸν Αβιαθαρ τοῦ μὴ εἶναι ἱερέα τοῦ κυρίου πληρωθῆναι τὸ ῥῆμα κυρίου ὃ ἐλάλησεν ἐπὶ τὸν οἶκον Ηλι ἐν Σηλωμ

And Solomon expelled Abiathar from being a priest of the LORD, so as to fulfill the word of the LORD that he spoke against the house of Eli in Shiloh.

Narrative comment: theological fulfillment (the deposition interpreted) καὶ ἐξέβαλεν Σαλωμων

The narrator interprets Abiathar's deposition as the fulfillment of the prophecy against the house of Eli (1 Sam 2:27–36; 3:11–14). The genitive articular infinitive τοῦ μὴ εἶναι ('so as not to be') states the result; the second infinitive πληρωθῆναι ('to fulfill') gives the deeper theological purpose: dynastic-priestly politics serve YHWH's earlier word. Abiathar, last of Eli's line, is thus removed.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐξέβαλεν

expelled / cast out

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἐκβάλλω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἐκβάλλω: 'throw out / expel / remove'; renders ὤλῳ; Solomon removes Abiathar from priestly office — a deposition, not an execution.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the king.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Αβιαθαρ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αβιαθαρ

Abiathar

direct object of ἐξέβαλεν (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Αβιαθαρ: indeclinable; the deposed priest, last of Eli's line.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (governing articular infinitive, result)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

μὴ

not

negative particle (with infinitive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

μὴ: the negative used with infinitives; 'so as not to be a priest.'

εἶναι

to be

Pres Act Inf · εἰμί

articular infinitive of result (τοῦ μὴ εἶναι)

→ verbal action or state

εἰμί: the genitive articular infinitive τοῦ μὴ εἶναι ('so as not to be') expresses result — Abiathar ceases to function as priest.

ἱερέα

a priest

Accusative

predicate accusative (with εἶναι)

→ object specification

ἱερεύς: 'priest'; the office of which Abiathar is deprived.

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of relationship ('priest of the LORD')

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton
יהוה; 'priest of the LORD'

πληρωθῆναι

to fulfill / be fulfilled

Aor Pass Inf · πληρώω

infinitive of purpose/result (theological)

→ verbal action or state

πληρώω: 'fill / fulfill / complete'; the passive infinitive 'so that the word might be fulfilled' interprets the deposition as fulfilling the oracle against Eli's house — a fulfillment-formula characteristic of deuteronomistic theology.

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ῥῆμα

word / saying

Accusative

subject of the passive infinitive πληρωθῆναι (acc. with inf.)

→ object specification

ῥῆμα: 'word / saying / matter'; renders
רָצַף; the prophetic word against Eli's house
(1 Sam 2:27–36).

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of source (with ῥῆμα)

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton;
'the word of the LORD' = YHWH's prophetic
oracle.

ὃ

which

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ἐλάλησεν)

→ participant reference

ὃς: relative pronoun, acc. neut. sg.,
referring to ῥῆμα.

ἐλάλησεν

he spoke

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λαλέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist (the past oracle)

λαλέω: 'speak'; refers to YHWH's prophetic
word at Shiloh against Eli's priestly house.

ἐπὶ

against / concerning

preposition + accusative (hostile: 'against')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπὶ + accusative: here 'against /
concerning'; the oracle directed against
Eli's house.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and
the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἶκον

house

Accusative

accusative object of ἐπὶ

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house / household / line'; 'the
house of Eli' = the Elide priestly dynasty, of
which Abiathar was the last to serve.

Ηλι

of Eli

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ηλι: transliteration of עֵלִי (Eli);
indeclinable; the priest of Shiloh against
whose house judgment was pronounced (1
Sam 2–3).

ἐν

in / at

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation
signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

Σηλωμ

Shiloh

dative of place (indeclinable place-name, with ἐν)

→ participant identification

Σηλωμ: transliteration of שִׁלּוֹ (Shiloh);
indeclinable; the early sanctuary-site
where the ark resided under Eli and the
oracle was delivered.

28 καὶ ἡ ἀκοὴ ἦλθεν ἕως Ἰωαβ τοῦ υἱοῦ Σαρουίας ὅτι Ἰωαβ ἦν κεκλικῶς ὀπίσω Ἀδωνίου καὶ ὀπίσω
Σαλωμων οὐκ ἔκλινεν καὶ ἔφυγεν Ἰωαβ εἰς τὸ σκῆνωμα τοῦ κυρίου καὶ κατέσχευεν τῶν κεράτων τοῦ
θυσιαστηρίου

And the report came to Joab son of Zeruiah — for Joab had inclined after Adonijah, but after
Solomon he had not inclined — and Joab fled to the tent of the LORD and took hold of the horns of
the altar.

Narrative: new scene (Joab's flight to sanctuary)

καὶ ἡ ἀκοὴ ἦλθεν ἕως Ἰωαβ

The Joab episode opens with the report (ἀκοή) reaching him. The parenthetical periphrastic
pluperfect ἦν κεκλικῶς ('had inclined') with its antithesis (after Adonijah, not after Solomon) explains
his peril: he had backed the failed pretender (1:7; also Absalom). Joab seeks asylum at 'the horns of the
altar,' the recognized place of refuge (Exod 21:14), gripping them (κατέσχευεν) — though that very law
denied refuge to a willful murderer.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄκοή

report / news

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

ἄκοή: 'report / rumor / hearing'; renders ἡχὴ μαρτυρίας; 'the report' of the executions reaches Joab, prompting his flight.

ἦλθεν

came

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἔρχομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἔρχομαι: 'come'; 'the report came as far as Joab' = news reached him.

ἕως

as far as / to

preposition + genitive (extent: 'reaching to')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἕως + genitive: 'up to / as far as'; the report 'reached as far as' Joab.

Ἰωαβ

Joab

genitive object of ἕως (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ἰωαβ: indeclinable; the army commander, here the recipient of the news.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

υἱοῦ

son

Genitive

genitive in apposition to Ἰωαβ

→ relational specification

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Zeruiah.'

Σαρουίας

of Zeruiah

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

Σαρουία: Zeruiah; genitive Σαρουίας; Joab's mother, David's sister.

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction (introducing the explanatory parenthesis)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; introduces the explanation of Joab's danger.

Ἰωαβ

Joab

subject of the periphrastic clause (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ἰωαβ: indeclinable; subject of the parenthetical explanation.

ἦν

had

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

auxiliary (with participle κεκλικώς, periphrastic pluperfect)

→ periphrastic pluperfect (settled prior allegiance)

εἰμί: imperfect auxiliary; with the perfect participle κεκλικώς forms a periphrastic pluperfect 'had inclined' — Joab's settled past allegiance.

κεκλικῶς

inclined / turned

Perf Act Part Nom Masc Sg · κλίνω

participle (with ἦν, periphrastic pluperfect)

→ perfect participle (resultant inclination)

κλίνω: 'bend / incline / turn'; renders חָנָה; 'had inclined after Adonijah' = had thrown his support to the pretender (1:7); the political miscalculation that now imperils him.

ὀπίσω

after

preposition + genitive (allegiance: 'after / behind')

→ spatial or relational framing

ὀπίσω + genitive: 'after / behind'; 'incline after' = follow/support (Hebraism יָרַח־אֲחֵרֵי).

Αδωνίου

Adonijah

Genitive

genitive object of ὀπίσω

→ relational specification

Αδωνιάς: genitive (Αδωνίου); the pretender Joab backed.

καὶ

and / but

coordinate conjunction (adversative)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὀπίσω

after

preposition + genitive (allegiance, fronted for contrast)

→ spatial or relational framing

ὀπίσω + genitive: 'after'; fronted before its negated verb for emphatic contrast.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

genitive object of ὀπίσω (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; here genitive 'after Solomon.'

οὐκ

not

negative particle

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of ἔκλινεν — Joab did not side with Solomon.

ἔκλινεν

he inclined

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · κλίνω

main verb of the parenthesis (negated)

→ constative aorist (negated allegiance)

κλίνω: 'incline / turn'; 'after Solomon he did not incline' — the fatal failure to support the eventual victor.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (resuming main line)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔφυγεν

fled

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · φεύγω

main verb

→ constative aorist

φεύγω: 'flee'; renders פָּגַע; Joab flees to sanctuary, seeking asylum at the altar.

Ιωαβ

Joab

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: indeclinable; the fugitive.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

σκήνωμα

tent / tabernacle

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

σκήνωμα: 'tent / dwelling / tabernacle'; renders לַיהוָה; 'the tent of the LORD' = the sacred tent housing the altar, a place of asylum (cf. σκηνή, v. 29–30).

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; 'the tent of the LORD' = YHWH's sanctuary.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

κατέσχεν

took hold / seized

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · κατέχω

main verb (with partitive genitive)

→ constative aorist (grasping for asylum)

κατέχω: 'hold fast / seize / grasp'; renders קָיַם / יָחַץ; Joab grips the altar-horns, the gesture of one claiming sanctuary (cf. 1:50–51 of Adonijah).

τῶν

the

Genitive

article (partitive genitive)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῶν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κεράτων

horns

Genitive

partitive genitive (object of κατέσχεν)

→ relational specification

κέρας (pl. κέρατα): 'horn'; renders קַרְנֹת; the projecting 'horns' at the altar's four corners; grasping them claimed asylum (Exod 27:2; 1 Kings 1:50).

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θυσιαστηρίου

altar

Genitive

genitive of relationship ('horns of the altar')

→ relational specification

θυσιαστήριον: 'altar'; renders זֶבֶח; the altar of burnt offering, whose horns afforded asylum — though not, per Exod 21:14, to a willful murderer like Joab.

29 καὶ ἀπηγγέλη τῷ Σαλωμων λέγοντες ὅτι ἔφυγεν Ιωαβ εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν τοῦ κυρίου καὶ ἰδοὺ κατέχει τῶν κεράτων τοῦ θυσιαστηρίου καὶ ἀπέστειλεν Σαλωμων πρὸς Ιωαβ λέγων τί γέγονέν σοι ὅτι πέφευγας εἰς τὸ θυσιαστήριον καὶ εἶπεν Ιωαβ ὅτι ἐφοβήθην ἀπὸ προσώπου σου καὶ ἔφυγον πρὸς κύριον καὶ ἀπέστειλεν Σαλωμων ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Βαναιου υἱὸν Ιωδαε λέγων πορεύου καὶ ἄνελε αὐτὸν καὶ θάψον αὐτόν

And it was reported to Solomon, saying, 'Joab has fled to the tent of the LORD, and behold, he is holding the horns of the altar.' And Solomon sent to Joab, saying, 'What has happened to you, that you have fled to the altar?' And Joab said, 'Because I was afraid before you, and I fled to the LORD.' And King Solomon sent Benaiah son of Jehoiada, saying, 'Go, strike him down and bury him.'

Narrative + dialogue: the report, exchange, and death-order

καὶ ἀπηγγέλη τῷ Σαλωμων

This long verse compresses report, royal interrogation, Joab's confession of fear (ἐφοβήθην ἀπὸ προσώπου σου, 'I was afraid before you'), and the death-order in one sweep. The constructio ad sensum λέγοντες ('saying', masc. pl. with impersonal ἀπηγγέλη) is a Hebraism. Joab's 'I fled to the LORD' claims sanctuary, but Solomon dispatches Benaiah with the terse triple command πορεύου ... ἄνελε ... θάψον ('go, strike, bury').

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπηγγέλη

it was reported

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · ἀπαγγέλλω

main verb (impersonal passive)

→ constative aorist

ἀπαγγέλλω: 'report / announce'; renders ἤρᾱ (Hophal); the impersonal passive 'it was reported to Solomon' introduces the news of Joab's asylum.

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

dative indirect object (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the recipient of the report.

λέγοντες

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · λέγω

participle (constructio ad sensum: 'people saying')

→ present participle (speech accompanying the objecting)

λέγω: the masculine-plural participle λέγοντες after the impersonal passive ἀπηγγέλη is a constructio ad sensum (= 'they reported, saying'), a Hebraism calquing רָאִינוּ.

ὅτι

that

conjunction (introducing reported speech)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: recitative 'that' introducing the content of the report.

ἔφυγεν

has fled

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · φεύγω

verb of reported clause

→ constative aorist

φεύγω: 'flee'; reports Joab's flight to sanctuary.

Ιωαβ

Joab

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: indeclinable; the fugitive.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

σκηνὴν

tent / tabernacle

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

σκηνή: 'tent / tabernacle'; renders לְהֵאָחֵז; the sacred tent (synonymous with σκήνωμα, v. 28).

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton; 'the tent of the LORD!'

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἰδοὺ

behold

Aor Mid Impv 2 Sg · ὁράω (frozen interjection)

presentative particle

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἰδοὺ: 'behold'; renders הִנֵּה; vividly presents Joab clinging to the altar.

κατέχει

he is holding

Pres Act Indic 3 Sg · κατέχω

verb of reported clause

→ vivid present (the ongoing grasp)

κατέχω: 'hold fast / grasp'; the present 'he is holding (the horns)' depicts the ongoing claim of asylum.

τῶν

the

Genitive

article (partitive genitive)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῶν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κεράτων

horns

Genitive

partitive genitive (object of κατέχει)

→ relational specification

κέρας: 'horn'; the altar-horns gripped for sanctuary.

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θυσιαστηρίου

altar

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

θυσιαστήριον: 'altar'; the altar of asylum.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέστειλεν

sent

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποστέλλω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀποστέλλω: 'send'; Solomon sends a message to Joab demanding explanation.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the king.

πρὸς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

Ιωαβ

Joab

accusative object of πρὸς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: indeclinable; the addressee.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: λέγων introducing the king's question, calquing יִמְנָן.

τί

what

Nominative

interrogative pronoun (subject of γέγονεν)

→ participant reference

τίς: interrogative; 'what has happened to you?' — a challenge phrased as concern.

γέγονέν

has happened

Perf Act Indic 3 Sg · γίνομαι

main verb of question (perfect)

→ resultative perfect (present state resulting from a past event)

γίνομαι: 'become / happen'; the perfect 'what has happened to you?' inquires into the present situation produced by Joab's flight.

σοι

to you

Dative

dative of reference

→ participant reference or interest

σοι: meaning 'to you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative of reference.

ὅτι

that

conjunction (causal/consecutive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'that / seeing that'; introduces the ground of the question.

πέφευγας

you have fled

Perf Act Indic 2 Sg · φεύγω

verb of subordinate clause (perfect)

→ resultative perfect (fled and now in refuge)

φεύγω: 'flee'; the perfect 'you have fled (and remain) at the altar' stresses Joab's present asylum-state.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θυσιαστήριον

altar

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

θυσιαστήριον: 'altar'; the place of refuge to which Joab fled.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Joab's reply.

Ιωαβ

Joab

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: indeclinable; the fugitive speaking.

ὅτι

because

causal conjunction (recitative/causal)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; Joab's answer gives his reason.

ἐφοβήθην

I was afraid

Aor Pass Indic 1 Sg · φοβέομαι

verb of causal clause

→ constative aorist (the onset of fear)

φοβέομαι: 'fear / be afraid'; renders אָרָא ; Joab confesses fear of Solomon as his motive for seeking asylum.

ἀπὸ

before / from

preposition + genitive (Hebraism: 'from the face of')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀπό: in ἀπὸ προσώπου ('from the face of', מִפְנֵי), a Hebraism for 'before / because of'.

προσώπου

face / presence

Genitive

genitive object of από (refuge-from idiom)

→ relational specification

πρόσωπον: 'face'; ἀπὸ προσώπου σου ('from before you') = in fear of you.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔφυγον

I fled

Aor Act Indic 1 Sg · φεύγω

verb of causal clause

→ constative aorist

φεύγω: 'flee'; 'I fled to the LORD' — Joab claims divine asylum, casting his flight as religious refuge.

πρὸς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

κύριον

the LORD

Accusative

accusative object of πρὸς

→ object specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; 'I fled to the LORD' = sought asylum at YHWH's altar.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέστειλεν

sent

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποστέλλω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀποστέλλω: 'send'; Solomon dispatches his executioner.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the king.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article (in apposition)

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Σαλωμων

→ participant prominence

βασιλεύς: 'king'; 'Solomon the king' acting with royal authority.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing genitive-form name βασιαιου)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Βαναιου

Benaiah

Accusative

direct object of ἀπέστειλεν (frozen genitive form, acc. via article)

→ object specification

Βαναιας; here the genitive-form Βαναιου is treated as an indeclinable-style object marked accusative by τόν — a not-uncommon LXX irregularity; Solomon's executioner.

υἱόν

son

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Βαναιου

→ object specification

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jehoiada.'

Ιωδαε

of Jehoiada

genitive of relationship (indeclinable patronymic)

→ participant identification

Ιωδαε: indeclinable; Benaiah's father.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: λέγων introducing the death-order.

πορεύου

go

Pres Mid Impv 2 Sg · πορεύομαι

main verb (imperative)

→ present imperative (command to set out)

πορεύομαι: 'go'; first of the triple command 'go, strike, bury.'

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἄνελε

strike down / kill

Aor Act Impv 2 Sg · ἀναιρέω

main verb (imperative)

→ aorist imperative (decisive command to kill)

ἀναιρέω: 'kill / do away with'; the order to execute Joab even at the altar — overriding the asylum-claim, since Joab is a willful murderer (Exod 21:14).

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

θάψον

bury

Aor Act Impv 2 Sg · θάπτω

main verb (imperative)

→ aorist imperative

θάπτω: 'bury'; the third command — Joab is to receive burial (cf. v. 34), an honorable disposal despite the execution.

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

30 καὶ ἦλθεν Βαναιου υἱὸς Ἰωδαε πρὸς Ἰωαβ εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν τοῦ κυρίου καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ τάδε λέγει ὁ βασιλεὺς ἔξελθε καὶ εἶπεν Ἰωαβ οὐκ ἐκπορεύομαι ὅτι ὧδε ἀποθανοῦμαι καὶ ἀπέστρεψεν Βαναιας υἱὸς Ἰωδαε καὶ εἶπεν τῷ βασιλεῖ λέγων τάδε λελάληκεν Ἰωαβ καὶ τάδε ἀποκέκριταί μοι

And Benaiah son of Jehoiada came to Joab at the tent of the LORD and said to him, 'Thus says the king: Come out.' And Joab said, 'I will not come out, for here I will die.' And Benaiah son of Jehoiada returned and said to the king, 'Thus has Joab spoken, and thus has he answered me.'

Narrative + dialogue: Benaiah's parley and Joab's defiance

καὶ ἦλθεν Βαναιου υἱὸς Ἰωδαε

Benaiah hesitates to violate sanctuary, so he summons Joab out with the royal messenger-formula τάδε λέγει ὁ βασιλεὺς ('thus says the king', echoing prophetic τάδε λέγει κύριος). Joab's defiant refusal — 'I will not come out, for here I will die' — chooses death at the altar, forcing the king's hand. Benaiah reports back with the perfect verbs λελάληκεν ... ἀποκέκριται ('he has spoken ... answered'), seeking fresh instruction.

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἦλθεν

came

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἔρχομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἔρχομαι: 'come'; Benaiah arrives at the sanctuary to confront Joab.

Βαναιου

Benaiah

Nominative

subject (frozen genitive form used as nominative)

→ participant prominence

Βαναιας: here the genitive-form Βαναιου functions as the subject ('Benaiah came') — an LXX irregularity in the declension of this name.

υἱὸς

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Βαναιου

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jehoiada.'

Ἰωδαε

of Jehoiada

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ἰωδαε: indeclinable; Benaiah's father.

πρὸς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

Ἰωαβ

Joab

accusative object of πρὸς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ἰωαβ: indeclinable; the fugitive at the altar.

εἰς

to / at

preposition + accusative (location toward)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (location toward).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

σκηνὴν

tent / tabernacle

Accusative

accusative of place (with εἰς)

→ object specification

σκηνή: 'tent / tabernacle'; the sanctuary where Joab clings to the altar.

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton; 'the tent of the LORD.'

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Benaiah's summons.

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

τάδε

thus / these things

Accusative

demonstrative pronoun (object of λέγει, messenger-formula)

→ participant reference

ὅδε: 'this'; in the royal messenger-formula τάδε λέγει ὁ βασιλεύς ('thus says the king'), modeled on the prophetic τάδε λέγει κύριος (יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ).

λέγει

says

Pres Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (messenger-formula, historic present)

→ historic present (vivid citation of royal command)

λέγω (pres.): the messenger-formula present 'thus says the king' lends the royal order immediate authority.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεύς

king

Nominative

subject of λέγει

→ participant prominence

βασιλεύς: 'king'; the authority behind Benaiah's summons.

ἔξελθε

come out

Aor Act Impv 2 Sg · ἐξέρχομαι

main verb (imperative, royal command)

→ aorist imperative (summons from sanctuary)

ἐξέρχομαι: 'go/come out'; the command 'come out' would remove Joab from the altar's protection so he might be killed away from the sacred precinct.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Joab's defiant refusal.

Ιωαβ

Joab

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: indeclinable; the defiant fugitive.

οὐκ

not

negative particle

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of ἐκπορεύομαι — Joab's refusal.

ἐκπορεύομαι

I will come out

Pres Mid Indic 1 Sg · ἐκπορεύομαι

main verb (defiant present/futuristic)

→ futuristic present (resolute refusal)

ἐκπορεύομαι: 'go/come out'; the present 'I am not coming out' is a flat, defiant refusal to leave the altar.

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; gives Joab's grim reason.

ᾧδε

here

adverb of place

→ clausal contribution

ᾧδε: 'here'; 'here (at the altar) I will die' — Joab chooses to die in the sanctuary rather than be dragged out.

ἀποθάνομαι

I will die

Fut Mid Indic 1 Sg · ἀποθνήσκω

verb of causal clause

→ predictive future (resolute acceptance of death)

ἀποθνήσκω: 'die'; Joab resolves to die at the altar, forcing Solomon to authorize killing within the sacred space.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέστρεψεν

returned

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποστρέφω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀποστρέφω: 'turn back / return'; here intransitive 'returned' — Benaiah goes back to report Joab's defiance and seek further orders.

Βαναιας

Benaiah

Nominative

subject (regular nominative form)

→ participant prominence

Βαναιας: here the regular nominative form (contrast frozen Βαναιου above); the executioner reporting back.

υἱός

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Βαναιας

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jehoiada.'

Ιωδαε

of Jehoiada

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωδαε: indeclinable; Benaiah's father.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Benaiah's report.

τῷ

to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεῖ

king

Dative

dative indirect object

→ sphere or reference

βασιλεῖς: 'king'; Solomon, to whom Benaiah reports.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: λέγων introducing the report's content.

τάδε

thus

Accusative

demonstrative pronoun (object of λελάληκεν)

→ participant reference

ὅδε: 'this / thus'; 'thus Joab has spoken' summarizes his defiant words.

λελάληκεν

has spoken

Perf Act Indic 3 Sg · λαλέω

main verb (perfect)

→ resultative perfect (Joab's words standing on record)

λαλέω: 'speak'; the perfect 'has spoken' presents Joab's defiance as a fixed datum for the king's decision.

Ἰωαβ

Joab

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ἰωαβ: indeclinable; the defiant subject.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τάδε

thus

Accusative

demonstrative pronoun (object of ἀποκρίται)

→ participant reference

ὅδε: 'this / thus'; 'thus he has answered me'
— restating Joab's reply for the king.

ἀποκρίται

has answered

Perf Mid Indic 3 Sg · ἀποκρίνομαι

main verb (perfect)

→ resultative perfect (the answer standing on record)

ἀποκρίνομαι: 'answer'; the perfect 'has answered me' presents Joab's response as the settled basis for Solomon's next order (v. 31).

μοι

to me

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

μοι: meaning 'to me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

31 καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὁ βασιλεὺς πορεύου καὶ ποιήσον αὐτῷ καθὼς εἶρηκεν καὶ ἄνελε αὐτὸν καὶ θάψεις αὐτὸν καὶ ἐξαρεῖς σήμερον τὸ αἷμα ὃ δωρεὰν ἐξέχεεν Ἰωαβ ἅπ' ἐμοῦ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ οἴκου τοῦ πατρός μου

And the king said to him, 'Go and do to him as he has said: strike him down and bury him, and you shall remove today the blood that Joab shed without cause from me and from the house of my father.'

Direct speech: the renewed death-order with its rationale (bloodguilt removed)

καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὁ βασιλεὺς

Solomon grants Joab's death-at-the-altar wish ('do to him as he has said') and supplies the theological-legal rationale: executing Joab will 'remove' (ἐξαρεῖς) the bloodguilt of his unprovoked killings (δωρεάν, 'without cause') from David's house. The verb ἐξαίρω is deuteronomistic purge-language ('you shall remove the evil from your midst', Deut 19:13).

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Solomon's renewed order.

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon.

πορεύου

go

Pres Mid Impv 2 Sg · πορεύομαι

main verb (imperative)

→ present imperative

πορεύομαι: 'go'; renews the command to act.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ποιήσον

do

Aor Act Impv 2 Sg · ποιέω

main verb (imperative)

→ aorist imperative

ποιέω: 'do'; 'do to him as he has said' — Solomon accedes to Joab's choice to die at the altar.

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

καθώς

as

comparative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καθώς: 'just as'; introduces the comparison with Joab's own words.

εἶρηκεν

he has said

Perf Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω (εἶρω)

verb of comparative clause (perfect)

→ resultative perfect

λέγω (perf. εἶρηκα): 'say'; 'as he has said' refers to Joab's declared willingness to die at the altar (v. 30).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἄνελε

strike down / kill

Aor Act Impv 2 Sg · ἀναιρέω

main verb (imperative)

→ aorist imperative

ἀναιρέω: 'kill'; the explicit order to execute Joab, even at the altar.

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

θάψεις

you shall bury

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · θάπτω

main verb (imperative future)

→ imperative future (command to bury)

θάπτω: 'bury'; the imperative future commands burial — Joab still receives interment (v. 34).

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐξαρεῖς

you shall remove

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · ἐξαίρω

main verb (imperative future)

→ imperative future (purging of bloodguilt)

ἐξαίρω: 'take away / remove / purge'; renders רָצַח ('purge out'); deuteronomistic purge-language (Deut 19:13); executing Joab removes the bloodguilt from David's house.

σήμερον

today

temporal adverb

→ clausal contribution

σήμερον: 'today'; renders הַיּוֹם; the purgation is to be accomplished at once.

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αἷμα

blood / bloodguilt

Accusative

direct object of ἐξάρπεις

→ object specification

αἷμα: 'blood'; here 'bloodguilt' — the moral stain of Joab's murders that must be purged from the dynasty.

ὃ

which

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ἐξέχεεν)

→ participant reference

ὃς: relative pronoun, acc. neut. sg., referring to αἷμα.

δωρεάν

without cause / gratuitously

adverbial accusative (manner)

→ clausal contribution

δωρεάν: 'freely / without cause / gratuitously'; renders דָּבָר ; underscores that Joab's killings of Abner and Amasa were unprovoked murders, hence true bloodguilt.

ἐξέχεεν

shed / poured out

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἐκχέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist

ἐκχέω: 'pour out / shed'; renders יָצַק ; 'shed blood' (יָצַק דָּם) is the standard idiom for murder.

יואב

Joab

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

יואב: indeclinable; the murderer.

ἀπ'

from

preposition + genitive (separation, elided)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀπό: 'from'; the bloodguilt is removed 'from me (Solomon) and from my father's house.'

ἐμοῦ

me

Genitive

genitive object of ἀπό

→ relational specification

ἐγώ: emphatic genitive; the bloodguilt must be cleared from Solomon himself.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπὸ

from

preposition + genitive (separation)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀπὸ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (separation).

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἴκου

house

Genitive

genitive object of ἀπό

→ relational specification

οἶκος: 'house / household / dynasty'; 'the house of my father' = David's dynasty, which must be purged of Joab's bloodguilt.

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πατρός

father

Genitive

genitive of relationship ('house of my father')

→ relational specification

πατήρ: 'father'; David, whose house bore the latent bloodguilt of Joab's deeds.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

32 καὶ ἀπέστρεψεν κύριος τὸ αἷμα τῆς ἀδικίας αὐτοῦ εἰς κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ ὡς ἀπῆντησεν τοῖς δυσὶν ἀνθρώποις τοῖς δικαίοις καὶ ἀγαθοῖς ὑπὲρ αὐτὸν καὶ ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτοὺς ἐν ῥομφαίᾳ καὶ ὁ πατήρ μου Δαυιδ οὐκ ἔγνω τὸ αἷμα αὐτῶν τὸν Αβεννηρ υἱὸν Νηρ ἀρχιστράτηγον Ἰσραηλ καὶ τὸν Αμεσσα υἱὸν Ἰεθερ ἀρχιστράτηγον Ἰουδα

And the LORD shall return the blood of his wrongdoing on his own head, because he met two men more righteous and good than himself and killed them with the sword — and my father David did not know it — Abner son of Ner, commander-in-chief of Israel, and Amasa son of Jether, commander-in-chief of Judah.

Direct speech: the *lex talionis* principle (blood returns on the shedder)

καὶ ἀπέστρεψεν κύριος

Solomon articulates the talionic principle: YHWH 'returns the blood on his own head' — Joab's death is divine requital, not mere royal vengeance. The aorist ἀπέστρεψεν is prophetic/performative ('the LORD herewith returns'). The ground is restated: Joab murdered two better men (Abner, Amasa) by the sword, unknown to David, thus incurring personal bloodguilt that does not attach to the innocent king.

καὶ

and

narrative/coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέστρεψεν

shall return / has returned

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποστρέφω

main verb (performative/prophetic aorist)

→ performative aorist (the divine requital declared as accomplished)

ἀποστρέφω: 'turn back / return'; renders יָשַׁבְהָ; 'the LORD returns the blood on his head' (cf. יָשַׁבְהָ) is the talionic principle — bloodguilt recoils on the shedder.

κύριος

the LORD

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; YHWH is the true agent of the requital, framing the execution as divine justice.

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αἷμα

blood / bloodguilt

Accusative

direct object of ἀπέστρεψεν

→ object specification

αἷμα: 'blood / bloodguilt'; the guilt of Joab's murders, now returned upon him.

τῆς

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἀδικίας

wrongdoing / injustice

Genitive

genitive of quality ('blood of his wrongdoing')

→ relational specification

ἀδικία: 'injustice / wrongdoing / unrighteousness'; the genitive of quality marks the blood as guiltily, unjustly shed.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

εἰς

on / onto

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'onto'; 'on his own head' (עַל רֹאשׁוֹ), the talionic idiom.

κεφαλὴν

head

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

κεφαλὴ: 'head'; 'on his head' = upon himself; the locus where bloodguilt settles for requital.

αὐτοῦ

his own

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his own'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ὥς

because / as

causal/comparative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὥς: here causal 'inasmuch as / because'; introduces the ground of requital.

ἀπήντησεν

met / fell upon

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀπαντάω

verb of causal clause

→ constative aorist

ἀπαντάω: 'meet / encounter / fall upon'; here 'fell upon / attacked' the two men — euphemistic for treacherous assault (cf. πάγω).

τοῖς

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δυσὶν

two

Dative

numeral (modifying ἀνθρώποις)

→ sphere or reference

δύο: 'two'; dative δυσὶν; the two victims — Abner and Amasa.

ἀνθρώποις

men

Dative

dative object of ἀπήντησεν

→ sphere or reference

ἄνθρωπος: 'man / human being'; the two men Joab killed.

τοῖς

the

Dative

article (with adjectives)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δικαίοις

righteous

Dative

attributive adjective (modifying ἀνθρώποις)

→ sphere or reference

δίκαιος: 'righteous / just'; renders דִּיּוּט; the victims were morally superior to their killer — heightening Joab's guilt.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀγαθοῖς

good

Dative

attributive adjective (modifying ἀνθρώποις)

→ sphere or reference

ἀγαθός: 'good'; renders בָּיִט; pairs with δίκαιος to characterize Abner and Amasa as upright men.

ὕπὲρ

than / above

preposition + accusative (comparison)

→ spatial or relational framing

ὕπὲρ + accusative: 'more than'; 'more righteous and good than himself.'

αὐτὸν

himself

Accusative

accusative of comparison (with ὕπὲρ)

→ participant reference

αὐτός: 'himself' (Joab); the comparison underscores the injustice of the murders.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέκτεινεν

killed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποκτείνω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀποκτείνω: 'kill'; Joab's murders of the two commanders.

αὐτούς

them

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτούς: meaning 'them'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

ἐν

by / with

preposition + dative (instrument)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'by'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (instrument).

ῥομφαία

sword

Dative

dative of instrument

→ sphere or reference

ῥομφαία: 'sword'; renders בִּרְיָה; the weapon of the murders (cf. 2 Sam 3:27; 20:10).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction (parenthetical)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πατήρ

father

Nominative

subject (in parenthesis)

→ participant prominence

πατήρ: 'father'; David, exonerated of the murders.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

Δαυιδ

David

nominative in apposition to πατήρ (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; 'David my father' — declared innocent of Joab's bloodguilt.

οὐκ

not

negative particle

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of ἔγνω — David's ignorance exonerates him.

ἔγνω

knew

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · γινώσκω

main verb of parenthesis (negated)

→ constative aorist (negated knowledge)

γινώσκω: 'know'; 'David did not know (of) their blood' — he neither sanctioned nor was complicit in the murders (cf. 2 Sam 3:26–28).

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αἷμα

blood

Accusative

direct object of ἔγνω

→ object specification

αἷμα: 'blood'; 'their blood' = the bloodshed of Abner and Amasa, of which David was unaware.

αὐτῶν

their

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτῶν: meaning 'their'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Αβεννηρ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αβεννηρ

Abner

accusative in apposition (the first victim; case via article)

→ participant identification

Αβεννηρ: indeclinable; Abner son of Ner, Israel's commander, murdered by Joab (2 Sam 3:27).

υἱὸν

son

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Αβεννηρ

→ object specification

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Ner.'

Νηρ

of Ner

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Νηρ: indeclinable; Abner's father.

ἄρχιστράτηγον

commander-in-chief

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Αβεννηρ

→ object specification

ἄρχιστράτηγος: 'commander-in-chief'; Abner commanded Saul's/Israel's army (2 Sam 2:8).

Ισραηλ

of Israel

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ισραηλ: indeclinable; 'commander of Israel' (the northern forces).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Αμεσσα)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Αμεσσα

Amasa

accusative in apposition (the second victim; case via article)

→ participant identification

Αμεσσα: indeclinable (here, contrast the form Αμεσσαῖ at v. 5); Amasa son of Jether, murdered by Joab (2 Sam 20:10).

υἱὸν

son

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Αμεσσα

→ object specification

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jether.'

Ιεθερ

of Jether

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιεθερ: indeclinable; Amasa's father.

ἄρχιστράτηγον

commander-in-chief

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Ἀμεσσα

→ object specification

ἄρχιστράτηγος: 'commander-in-chief';
Amasa commanded Judah's (Absalom's,
then David's) army (2 Sam 17:25; 19:13).

Ιουδα

of Judah

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιουδα: transliteration of יהודה (Judah);
indeclinable; 'commander of Judah' (the
southern forces) — the Abner/Israel :
Amasa/Judah pairing spans both kingdoms.

33 καὶ ἐπεστράφη τὰ αἵματα αὐτῶν εἰς κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς κεφαλὴν τοῦ σπέρματος αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα καὶ τῷ Δαυιδ καὶ τῷ σπέρματι αὐτοῦ καὶ τῷ οἴκῳ αὐτοῦ καὶ τῷ θρόνῳ αὐτοῦ γένοιτο εἰρήνη ἕως αἰῶνος παρὰ κυρίου

So their blood shall return on his head and on the head of his seed forever; but to David and to his seed and to his house and to his throne may there be peace forever from the LORD.

Direct speech: the antithetical curse-and-blessing (closing the Joab verdict)

καὶ ἐπεστράφη τὰ αἵματα αὐτῶν

Solomon closes with a balanced curse-and-blessing: the bloodguilt rests perpetually on Joab and his seed (curse), while peace from YHWH rests perpetually on David's seed, house, and throne (blessing). The optative of wish γένοιτο εἰρήνη ('may there be peace') invokes the Davidic covenant; the antithesis 'his head ... forever' / 'David's throne ... forever from the LORD' frames the execution as covenant-preserving.

καὶ
and / so

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐπεστράφη
shall return / has returned

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · ἐπιστρέφω

main verb (performative/prophetic aorist passive)

→ performative aorist (the bloodguilt declared to recoil)

ἐπιστρέφω: 'turn back / return'; the passive 'their blood is returned on his head' restates the talionic recoil of v. 32, now extended perpetually to Joab's seed.

τὰ
the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αἵματα
blood

Nominative

subject of ἐπεστράφη

→ participant prominence

αἶμα (pl. αἵματα): the idiomatic plural 'bloodshed / bloodguilt' (דַּמַּיִת); the guilt of the two murders.

αὐτῶν
their

Genitive

genitive of possession (the victims')

→ relational specification

αὐτῶν: meaning 'their'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession (the victims').

εἰς
on

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

κεφαλὴν
head

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

κεφαλὴ: 'head'; the talionic 'on his head' = upon Joab.

αὐτοῦ
his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἰς
on

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

κεφαλὴν
head

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

κεφαλὴ: 'head'; the bloodguilt extends to Joab's descendants.

τοῦ
of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

σπέρματος

seed / offspring

Genitive

genitive of relationship ('head of his seed')

→ relational specification

σπέρμα: 'seed / offspring / descendants'; renders וְיָ ; the bloodguilt is transgenerational — falling on Joab's line.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

εἰς

for / unto

preposition + accusative (duration)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: in εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα ('forever'), the duration-idiom (לְעֹלָם).

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αἰῶνα

age / forever

Accusative

accusative of duration (with εἰς)

→ object specification

αἰών: 'age / eternity'; εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα ('forever') — the perpetuity of the curse on Joab's line.

καὶ

but / and

coordinate conjunction (adversative turn to blessing)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'but'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Δαυιδ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Δαυιδ

David

dative of advantage (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; the first beneficiary of the counter-blessing of peace.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τῷ

to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

σπέρματι

seed / offspring

Dative

dative of advantage

→ sphere or reference

σπέρμα: 'seed / descendants'; David's offspring — the counterpart to Joab's cursed seed.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τῷ
to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἴκῳ
house

Dative

dative of advantage

→ sphere or reference

οἶκος: 'house / dynasty'; David's house, blessed with peace (cf. 2 Sam 7).

αὐτοῦ
his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τῷ
to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θρόνῳ
throne

Dative

dative of advantage

→ sphere or reference

θρόνος: 'throne'; David's throne, the dynastic seat blessed with perpetual peace.

αὐτοῦ
his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

γένοιτο
may there be

Aor Mid Opt 3 Sg · γίνομαι

main verb (optative of wish)

→ optative of wish (benediction)

γίνομαι: 'become / be'; the optative γένοιτο ('may there be') forms the benediction of perpetual peace on the Davidic dynasty.

εἰρήνη
peace

Nominative

subject of γένοιτο

→ participant prominence

εἰρήνη: 'peace / well-being'; renders עֲלֵינוּ; the comprehensive covenant blessing wished on David's line.

ἕως
unto / forever

preposition + genitive (duration)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἕως + genitive: 'until / unto'; ἕως αἰῶνος ('forever', עַד עֲלֵינוּ) marks perpetuity.

αἰῶνος
age / forever

Genitive

genitive of time (with ἕως)

→ relational specification

αἰών: 'age / eternity'; the peace is perpetual, matching the perpetuity of the curse on Joab.

παρά

from

preposition + genitive (source)

→ spatial or relational framing

παρά + genitive: 'from'; the peace comes
'from the LORD' — divinely guaranteed.

κυρίου

the LORD

Genitive

genitive of source (with παρά)

→ relational specification

κύριος; rendering of the Tetragrammaton
יהוה; the peace on David's house is
YHWH's own gift.

34 καὶ ἀπήντησεν Βαναιου υἱὸς Ἰωδαε τῷ Ἰωαβ καὶ ἔθανάτωσεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἔθαψεν αὐτὸν ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ ἐρήμῳ

And Benaiah son of Jehoiada went up to Joab and put him to death and buried him at his house in the wilderness.

Narrative: the execution carried out (Joab episode resolved)

καὶ ἀπήντησεν Βαναιου υἱὸς Ἰωδαε

The order is executed: Benaiah falls upon Joab (the verb ἀπήντησεν deliberately echoes Joab's own 'falling upon' his victims in v. 32 — lex talionis enacted) and kills him at the altar, then buries him at his own house in the wilderness. The burial 'at his house in the wilderness' (the Judean steppe near his estate) accords with the king's order to bury him (v. 31).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle
linking this unit with the surrounding
discourse.

ἀπήντησεν

went up to / fell upon

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀπαντάω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀπαντάω: 'meet / fall upon'; the same verb
used of Joab's assaults in v. 32 — a
deliberate verbal echo: Benaiah 'falls upon'
Joab as Joab fell upon Abner and Amasa,
enacting talionic justice.

Βαναιου

Benaiah

Nominative

subject (frozen genitive form used as nominative)

→ participant prominence

Βαναιας; the genitive-form Βαναιου here
serves as subject (cf. v. 30); the executioner.

υἱὸς

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Βαναιου

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jehoiada.'

Ιωδαε

of Jehoiada

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωδαε: indeclinable; Benaiah's father.

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Ιωαβ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Ιωαβ

Joab

dative object of ἀπήντησεν (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: indeclinable; the victim of the execution.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐθανάτωσεν

put to death

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · θανατόω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the killing)

θανάτω: 'put to death / kill'; renders תִּהַיֵּךְ; Benaiah executes Joab at the altar.

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔθαψεν

buried

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · θάπτω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the burial)

θάπτω: 'bury'; Joab is buried per the king's order (v. 31), at his own estate.

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

ἐν

at / in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'at'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

τῷ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἴκῳ

house

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

οἶκος: 'house / home'; 'at his (own) house' = on Joab's family property.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

τῇ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐρήμῳ

wilderness / desert

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

ἐρήμος: 'wilderness / desert / wasteland'; renders מִדְבָּר; Joab's estate lay in the Judean steppe; his burial there ends the Joab episode.

35 καὶ ἔδωκεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Βαναιου υἱὸν Ἰωδαε ἀντ' αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν στρατηγίαν καὶ ἡ βασιλεία
κατωρθοῦτο ἐν Ἱερουσαλημ καὶ τὸν Σαδωκ τὸν ἱερέα ἔδωκεν ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς ἱερέα πρῶτον ἀντὶ Ἀβιαθαρ
καὶ ἔδωκεν κύριος φρόνησιν τῷ Σαλωμων καὶ σοφίαν πολλὴν σφόδρα καὶ πλάτος καρδίας ὡς ἡ ἄμμος ἡ
παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ ἐπληθύνθη ἡ φρόνησις Σαλωμων σφόδρα ὑπὲρ τὴν φρόνησιν πάντων ἀρχαίων
υἱῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ πάντας φρονίμους Αἰγύπτου καὶ ἔλαβεν τὴν θυγατέρα Φαραω καὶ εἰσήγαγεν αὐτὴν εἰς
τὴν πόλιν Δαυιδ ἕως συντελέσαι αὐτὸν τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸν οἶκον κυρίου ἐν πρώτοις καὶ τὸ τεῖχος
Ἱερουσαλημ κυκλόθεν ἐν ἑπτὰ ἔτεσιν ἐποίησεν καὶ συνετέλεσεν καὶ ἦν τῷ Σαλωμων ἑβδομήκοντα
χιλιάδες αἵροντες ἄρσιν καὶ ὀγδοήκοντα χιλιάδες λατόμων ἐν τῷ ὄρει καὶ ἐποίησεν Σαλωμων τὴν
θάλασσαν καὶ τὰ ὑποστηρίγματα καὶ τοὺς λουτήρας τοὺς μεγάλους καὶ τοὺς στύλους καὶ τὴν κρήνην
τῆς αὐλῆς καὶ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν χαλκὴν καὶ ὠκοδόμησεν τὴν ἄκραν καὶ τὰς ἐπάλξεις αὐτῆς καὶ
διέκοψεν τὴν πόλιν Δαυιδ οὕτως θυγάτηρ Φαραω ἀνέβαινεν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως Δαυιδ εἰς τὸν οἶκον αὐτῆς
ὃν ὠκοδόμησεν αὐτῇ τότε ὠκοδόμησεν τὴν ἄκραν καὶ Σαλωμων ἀνέφερεν τρεῖς ἐν τῷ ἑνιαυτῷ
ὀλοκαυτώσεις καὶ εἰρηνικὰς ἐπὶ τὸ θυσιαστήριον ὃ ὠκοδόμησεν τῷ κυρίῳ καὶ ἐθυμία ἐνώπιον κυρίου
καὶ συνετέλεσεν τὸν οἶκον καὶ οὗτοι οἱ ἄρχοντες οἱ καθεσταμένοι ἐπὶ τὰ ἔργα τοῦ Σαλωμων τρεῖς
χιλιάδες καὶ ἑξακόσιοι ἐπιστάται τοῦ λαοῦ τῶν ποιούντων τὰ ἔργα καὶ ὠκοδόμησεν τὴν Ἀσσουρ καὶ τὴν
Μαγδω καὶ τὴν Γαζερ καὶ τὴν Βαιθωρων τὴν ἐπάνω καὶ τὰ Βααλαθ πλὴν μετὰ τὸ οἰκοδομῆσαι αὐτὸν
τὸν οἶκον τοῦ κυρίου καὶ τὸ τεῖχος Ἱερουσαλημ κύκλῳ μετὰ ταῦτα ὠκοδόμησεν τὰς πόλεις ταύτας καὶ
ἐν τῷ ἔτι Δαυιδ ζῆν ἐνετείλατο τῷ Σαλωμων λέγων ἰδοὺ μετὰ σοῦ Σεμεϊ υἱὸς Γηρα υἱὸς σπέρματος τοῦ
Ἰεμινι ἐκ Χεβρων οὗτος κατηράσατό με κατάραν ὀδυνηρὰν ἐν ἧ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπορευόμην εἰς παρεμβολάς καὶ
αὐτὸς κατέβαινεν εἰς ἀπαντὴν μοι ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰορδάνην καὶ ὥμοσα αὐτῷ κατὰ τοῦ κυρίου λέγων εἰ
θανατωθήσεται ἐν ῥομφαίᾳ καὶ νῦν μὴ ἀθρώσης αὐτόν ὅτι ἀνὴρ φρόνιμος σὺ καὶ γνώσῃ ἃ ποιήσεις
αὐτῷ καὶ κατάξεις τὴν πολιὰν αὐτοῦ ἐν αἵματι εἰς ἄδου

And the king set Benaiah son of Jehoiada in his place over the army, and the kingdom was set in order in Jerusalem; and Zadok the priest the king appointed as first priest in place of Abiathar. And the LORD gave Solomon understanding and very great wisdom and breadth of heart like the sand by the sea; and the understanding of Solomon increased greatly, beyond the understanding of all the ancients and beyond all the wise men of Egypt. And he took the daughter of Pharaoh and brought her into the city of David until he had finished his own house and the house of the LORD first and the wall of Jerusalem round about; in seven years he made and completed it. And Solomon had seventy thousand burden-bearers and eighty thousand stonecutters in the mountain. And Solomon made the sea and the supports and the great lavers and the pillars and the fountain of the court and the bronze sea. And he built the citadel and its battlements, and he breached the city of David; thus the daughter of Pharaoh went up from the city of David to her house which he built for her; then he built the citadel. And Solomon offered up three times a year whole burnt offerings and peace offerings on the altar which he built to the LORD, and he burned incense before the LORD, and he finished the house. And these are the officials appointed over the works of Solomon: three thousand six hundred overseers of the people who did the works. And he built Asshur and Magdo and Gazer and Upper Beth-horon and Baalath. But after he had built the house of the LORD and the wall of Jerusalem round about, afterward he built these cities. And while David was still living he charged Solomon, saying, 'Behold, with you is Shimei son of Gera, of the seed of the Benjamite, from Hebron. He cursed me with a grievous curse on the day I went to the camps; but he came down to meet me at the Jordan, and I swore to him by the LORD, saying, I will surely not put him to death by the sword. And now do not hold him guiltless, for you are a prudent man and will know what to do to him, and you shall bring his gray head down in blood to Hades.'

Narrative + LXX 'miscellany': appointments, then the great supplementary plus (35a-o)

καὶ ἔδωκεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Βαναιου

The base verse records Solomon's two key appointments — Benaiah over the army (replacing Joab) and Zadok as chief priest (replacing Abiathar) — sealing the consolidation. From there the verse runs into the LXX's first 'MISCELLANY' (traditionally 35a-o), a long block of supplementary material absent from the Hebrew MT (the source's inline sub-letter markers have been stripped and are not annotated). It gathers: Solomon's God-given wisdom 'like the sand by the sea,' surpassing the ancients and the Egyptians (35a-b); his marriage to Pharaoh's daughter and his building of his palace, the temple, and the wall of Jerusalem (35c); his corvée of 70,000 burden-bearers and 80,000 quarrymen (35d); his bronze sea and temple furnishings (35e); the Akra/Millo and the breaching of the city of David (35f); his thrice-yearly sacrifices (35g); his 3,600 overseers (35h); his store-cities (35i, 35k); and a doublet of David's charge concerning Shimei (35l-o, paralleling vv. 8-9). The MT distributes this material across 1 Kings 3-9, making 3 Kingdoms a witness to a divergent Hebrew arrangement.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔδωκεν

set / appointed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · δίδωμι

main verb

→ constative aorist

δίδωμι: 'give / set / appoint'; renders ἵστη; 'gave/set Benaiah over the army' = appointed him commander-in-chief in Joab's place.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon making appointments.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing genitive-form name Βαναιου)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Βαναιου

Benaiah

Accusative

direct object (frozen genitive form, acc. via article)

→ object specification

Βαναιας: frozen genitive-form Βαναιου marked accusative by τὸν; the loyal commander now elevated over the whole army.

υἱὸν

son

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Βαναιου

→ object specification

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jehoiada.'

Ἰωδαε

of Jehoiada

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ἰωδαε: indeclinable; Benaiah's father.

ἀντ'

in place of

preposition + genitive (substitution, elided)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀντί: 'instead of / in place of'; Benaiah replaces the executed Joab.

αὐτοῦ

him

Genitive

genitive object of ἀντί (Joab)

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive object of ἀντί (Joab).

ἐπὶ

over

preposition + accusative (oversight)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + accusative: 'over'; appointed 'over the army.'

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

στρατηγίαν

command / army-command

Accusative

accusative object of ἐπί

→ object specification

στρατηγία: 'generalship / military command'; the office of commander-in-chief, now Benaiah's.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεία

kingdom

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεία: 'kingdom'; Solomon's rule, now stabilized through the purges.

κατωρθοῦτο

was set in order / prospered

Impf Pass Indic 3 Sg · κατορθόω

main verb (imperfect passive)

→ imperfect (progressive establishment)

κατορθόω: 'set straight / make prosper / establish'; the imperfect passive 'was being established/set in order' echoes the establishment-refrain of v. 12 (anticipating κατωρθώθῃ at v. 46).

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

Ιερουσαλημ

Jerusalem

dative of place (indeclinable, with ἐν)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: indeclinable; the capital, seat of the established kingdom.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Σαδωκ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαδωκ

Zadok

direct object (fronted; indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαδωκ: transliteration of צִדְקָה (Zadok); indeclinable; the priest loyal to Solomon (1:8, 39), now installed as chief priest — founder of the Zadokite line.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (with ἱερέα)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἱερέα

priest

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Σαδωκ

→ object specification

ἱερεύς: 'priest'; Zadok's office.

ἔδωκεν

appointed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · δίδωμι

main verb

→ constative aorist

δίδωμι: 'give / appoint'; 'appointed Zadok as first priest' — the second key appointment.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon.

εἰς

as / for

preposition + accusative (predicate goal)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'as'; 'appointed as first priest' (predicate use, Hebraism).

ἱερέα

priest

Accusative

accusative (predicate goal with εἰς)

→ object specification

ἱερεύς: 'priest'; the office to which Zadok is raised.

πρῶτον

first / chief

Accusative

attributive adjective (modifying ἱερέα)

→ object specification

πρῶτος: 'first / foremost / chief'; 'first priest' = high priest; Zadok becomes head of the priesthood.

ἀντὶ

in place of

preposition + genitive (substitution)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀντὶ: 'instead of'; Zadok replaces the deposed Abiathar.

Αβιαθαρ

Abiathar

genitive object of ἀντὶ (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Αβιαθαρ: indeclinable; the deposed priest (vv. 26–27), replaced by Zadok.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35a)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔδωκεν

gave

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · δίδωμι

main verb

→ constative aorist

δίδωμι: 'give'; YHWH 'gave Solomon understanding' — the wisdom-gift theme that the MT develops at 1 Kings 3 and 5.

κύριος

the LORD

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; the divine giver of Solomon's wisdom.

φρόνησιν

understanding / prudence

Accusative

direct object of ἔδωκεν

→ object specification

φρόνησις: 'understanding / prudence / discernment'; renders תְּבוּנָה / תְּכֻמָּה; the practical wisdom granted Solomon (cf. 1 Kings 3:12).

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

dative indirect object (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; recipient of the wisdom-gift.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

σοφίαν

wisdom

Accusative

direct object of ἔδωκεν

→ object specification

σοφία: 'wisdom / skill'; renders חָכְמָה; paired with φρόνησις, the comprehensive God-given wisdom of Solomon.

πολλήν

much / great

Accusative

attributive adjective (modifying σοφίαν)

→ object specification

πολύς: 'much / great'; 'very great wisdom.'

σφόδρα

exceedingly

adverb of degree

→ clausal contribution

σφόδρα: 'exceedingly'; renders תַּחֲתָּה; intensifies 'great wisdom.'

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

πλάτος

breadth

Accusative

direct object of ἔδωκεν

→ object specification

πλάτος: 'breadth / width'; 'breadth of heart' (לֵב רָחֵב) = largeness of mind, vast comprehension (cf. 1 Kings 5:9 LXX).

καρδίας

of heart

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with πλάτος)

→ relational specification

καρδία: 'heart / mind'; renders בָּרֶחַב; 'breadth of heart' = expansive understanding.

ὥς

like / as

comparative particle

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὥς: 'like / as'; introduces the simile 'like the sand by the sea.'

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄμμος

sand

Nominative

subject of the simile (with ellipsis of verb)

→ participant prominence

ἄμμος: 'sand'; renders זֶרֶק; 'as the sand by the sea' is a proverbial image of immeasurable abundance (cf. Gen 22:17).

ἡ

the (one)

Nominative

article (attributive, 'the [sand] by the sea')

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

παρά

by / beside

preposition + accusative (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

παρά + accusative: 'beside / along'; 'the sand beside the sea.'

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θάλασσαν

sea

Accusative

accusative object of παρά

→ object specification

θάλασσα: 'sea'; renders יָם; the seashore whose sand images Solomon's boundless wisdom.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35b)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐπληθύνθη

increased / was multiplied

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · πληθύνω

main verb (passive)

→ constative aorist (the increase)

πληθύνω: 'multiply / increase'; renders הִתְרַבָּה; Solomon's understanding 'was multiplied' beyond all rivals (cf. 1 Kings 5:10 LXX).

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

φρόνησις

understanding

Nominative

subject of ἐπληθύνθη

→ participant prominence

φρόνησις: 'understanding / prudence'; Solomon's discernment, here surpassing all.

Σαλωμων

of Solomon

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; here genitive 'of Solomon.'

σφόδρα

exceedingly

adverb of degree

→ clausal contribution

σφόδρα: 'exceedingly'; intensifies the increase of wisdom.

ὕπὲρ

beyond / more than

preposition + accusative (comparison)

→ spatial or relational framing

ὕπὲρ + accusative: 'beyond / more than'; Solomon's wisdom surpasses all others.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

φρόνησιν

understanding

Accusative

accusative of comparison (with ὑπέρ)

→ object specification

φρόνησις: 'understanding'; the wisdom of others, surpassed by Solomon's.

πάντων

all

Genitive

genitive attributive (modifying νιῶν)

→ relational specification

παῖς: 'all'; 'all the ancients.'

ἀρχαίων

ancients / men of old

Genitive

genitive attributive (with νιῶν)

→ relational specification

ἀρχαῖος: 'ancient / of old'; 'the ancient ones / men of old' — the legendary sages whose wisdom Solomon exceeds.

νιῶν

sons / men

Genitive

genitive of comparison ('of the ancient sons/men')

→ relational specification

νιός: 'son'; 'sons of the ancients' = the men of old (Hebraism, בְּנֵי קִדְּוָה, cf. 1 Kings 5:10), renowned for wisdom.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὕπὲρ

beyond / more than

preposition + accusative (comparison)

→ spatial or relational framing

ὕπὲρ + accusative: 'beyond'; second comparison — the wise of Egypt.

πάντας

all

Accusative

adjective (modifying φρονίμους)

→ object specification

παῖς: 'all'; 'all the wise of Egypt.'

φρονίμους

wise / prudent men

Accusative

accusative of comparison (substantival adjective)

→ object specification

φρόνιμος: 'prudent / wise / sensible'; the wise men of Egypt, proverbial for learning, surpassed by Solomon (cf. 1 Kings 5:10).

Αἰγύπτου

of Egypt

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with φρονίμους)

→ relational specification

Αἴγυπτος: 'Egypt'; renders מִצְרַיִם; Egypt's sages, the benchmark of ancient wisdom, are eclipsed by Solomon.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35c)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔλαβεν

took

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λαμβάνω

main verb

→ constative aorist

λαμβάνω: 'take'; 'took the daughter of Pharaoh' (in marriage) — the diplomatic alliance recorded at 1 Kings 3:1.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θυγατέρα

daughter

Accusative

direct object of ἔλαβεν

→ object specification

θυγάτηρ: 'daughter'; renders בָּתּוּלָה; Pharaoh's daughter, Solomon's Egyptian bride, sealing a royal alliance.

Φαραω

of Pharaoh

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Φαραω: indeclinable; the Egyptian king, Solomon's father-in-law.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἰσήγαγεν

brought in

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰσάγω

main verb

→ constative aorist

εἰσάγω: 'bring in / lead in'; Solomon brought his bride into the city of David until his building projects were complete (1 Kings 3:1).

αὐτήν

her

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτήν: meaning 'her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

εἰς

into

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'into'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πόλιν

city

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

πόλις: 'city'; 'the city of David' (Zion), the royal quarter.

Δαυιδ

of David

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; 'city of David.'

ἕως

until

conjunction (temporal, with infinitive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἕως: 'until'; with the infinitive συντελέσαι forms a temporal clause 'until he finished.'

συντελέσαι

to finish / complete

Aor Act Inf · συντελέω

infinitive (temporal, with ἕως and acc. subject αὐτόν)

→ completive aorist infinitive

συντελέω: 'finish / complete / accomplish'; renders ἵζη; 'until he completed' his building works.

αὐτόν

he

Accusative

accusative subject of the infinitive συντελέσαι

→ participant reference

αὐτός: accusative subject of the infinitive ('until he finished').

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἶκον

house / palace

Accusative

direct object of συντελέσαι

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house'; here Solomon's own palace (cf. 1 Kings 7:1).

αὐτοῦ

his own

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his own'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἶκον

house / temple

Accusative

direct object of συντελέσαι

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house'; 'the house of the LORD' = the temple (1 Kings 6).

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton; 'the house of the LORD' = the temple.

ἐν

among / first

preposition + dative (priority idiom)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: in ἐν πρώτοις ('first of all / among the first'), an idiom of priority.

πρώτοις

first / first of all

Dative

substantival adjective (with ἐν: 'first of all')

→ sphere or reference

πρῶτος: 'first'; ἐν πρώτοις ('among the first / first of all') marks the temple as a priority project.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

τεῖχος

wall

Accusative

direct object of συντελέσαι

→ object specification

τεῖχος: 'wall / city-wall'; renders ἡ ἰερουσαλὴμ; the wall of Jerusalem, another major Solomonic project (1 Kings 3:1; 9:15).

Ιερουσαλημ

of Jerusalem

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: indeclinable; 'the wall of Jerusalem.'

κυκλόθεν

round about

adverb of place

→ clausal contribution

κυκλόθεν: 'round about / all around'; renders כָּכָבֶד; the wall encircled the city.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (temporal extent)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (temporal extent).

ἑπτὰ

seven

numeral (with ἔτεσιν)

→ measure or count

ἑπτὰ: 'seven'; the temple took seven years to build (1 Kings 6:38).

ἔτεσιν

years

Dative

dative of time (within which)

→ sphere or reference

ἔτος: 'year'; 'in seven years' — the construction period.

ἐποίησεν

he made / built

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ποιέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ποιέω: 'make / do / build'; Solomon 'made/built it' (the temple/wall) in seven years.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

συντετέλεσεν

completed / finished

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · συντελέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

συντελέω: 'complete / finish'; pairs with ἐποίησεν to stress the full accomplishment of the works.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35d)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἦν

there was / he had

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

main verb (existence/possession)

→ imperfect (state of having)

εἰμί: 'be'; with the dative τῷ Σαλωμων expresses possession ('Solomon had'); introduces the corvée-labor census.

τῷ

to / for

Dative

article (dative of possession)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

dative of possession (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; 'Solomon had' the laborers.

ἐβδομήκοντα

seventy

numeral (with χιλιάδες)

→ measure or count

ἐβδομήκοντα: 'seventy'; 'seventy thousand' burden-bearers (cf. 1 Kings 5:15).

χιλιάδες

thousands

Nominative

subject (with numeral ἐβδομήκοντα)

→ participant prominence

χιλιάς: 'thousand'; 'seventy thousand' of the labor force.

αἴροντες

bearing / carrying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · αἶρω

attributive participle (modifying χιλιάδες)

→ customary present (their ongoing labor)

αἶρω: 'lift / carry'; 'bearing a burden' = burden-bearers, the corvée porters (1 Kings 5:15; cf. 𐤀𐤁𐤏𐤍 𐤏𐤕𐤍).

ἄρσιν

burden / load

Accusative

direct object of αἴροντες (cognate)

→ object specification

ἄρσιν: 'a lifting / burden / load'; cognate with αἶρω; 'bearing a burden' describes the porters' corvée toil.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὀγδοήκοντα

eighty

numeral (with χιλιάδες)

→ measure or count

ὀγδοήκοντα: 'eighty'; 'eighty thousand' quarrymen (1 Kings 5:15).

χιλιάδες

thousands

Nominative

subject (with numeral ὀγδοήκοντα)

→ participant prominence

χιλιάς: 'thousand'; the eighty thousand stonecutters.

λατόμων

of stonecutters / quarrymen

Genitive

genitive of content (with χιλιάδες)

→ relational specification

λατόμος: 'stonecutter / quarryman'; renders 𐤀𐤁𐤏𐤍; those who hewed stone in the hill-country for the temple.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

τῷ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ὄρει

mountain / hill-country

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

ὄρος: 'mountain / hill-country'; renders ἦν; the quarrymen worked 'in the mountain' (the highlands).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35e)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐποίησεν

made

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ποιέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ποιέω: 'make'; introduces the list of bronze temple-furnishings Solomon made (1 Kings 7).

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the temple-builder.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θάλασσαν

sea / basin

Accusative

direct object of ἐποίησεν

→ object specification

θάλασσα: 'sea'; here the great bronze basin called 'the (molten) Sea' in the temple court (1 Kings 7:23).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὰ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ὑποστηρίγματα

supports / stands

Accusative

direct object of ἐποίησεν

→ object specification

ὑποστήριγμα: 'support / prop / stand'; the bronze stands/bases supporting the lavers (1 Kings 7:27).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τοὺς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοὺς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

λουτήρας

lavenders / basins

Accusative

direct object of ἐποίησεν

→ object specification

λουτήρ: 'laver / wash-basin'; the bronze lavenders for ritual washing (1 Kings 7:38).

τοὺς

the

Accusative

article (attributive)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοὺς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

μεγάλους

great / large

Accusative

attributive adjective (modifying λουτήρας)

→ object specification

μέγας: 'great / large'; 'the great lavenders' — the large washing-basins.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τοὺς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοὺς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

στύλους

pillars / columns

Accusative

direct object of ἐποίησεν

→ object specification

στύλος: 'pillar / column'; the two great bronze pillars Jachin and Boaz at the temple porch (1 Kings 7:15–22).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κρήνην

fountain / basin

Accusative

direct object of ἐποίησεν

→ object specification

κρήνη: 'fountain / spring / basin'; the water-feature of the temple court.

τῆς

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αὐλῆς

court / courtyard

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with κρήνην)

→ relational specification

αὐλή: 'court / courtyard'; renders רִצְוֹן; 'the fountain of the court' — a court-installation of the temple complex.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὴν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θάλασσαν
sea / basin

Accusative

direct object of ἐποίησεν

→ object specification

θάλασσα: 'sea'; the 'bronze Sea' — restating/specifying the great basin as cast in bronze.

τὴν
the

Accusative

article (attributive)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

χαλκῆν

bronze / of bronze

Accusative

attributive adjective (modifying θάλασσαν)

→ object specification

χαλκοῦς: 'made of bronze / copper'; renders תִּשְׁכֶּן; 'the bronze Sea' (1 Kings 7:23–26), the great cast-metal basin.

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35f)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ᾠκοδόμησεν

built

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · οἰκοδομέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

οἰκοδομέω: 'build'; renders בָּנָה; Solomon built the Akra/Millo, the fortified citadel of Jerusalem (cf. 1 Kings 9:15, 24).

τὴν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄκραν

citadel / Akra (Millo)

Accusative

direct object of ᾠκοδόμησεν

→ object specification

ἄκρα: 'citadel / fortified height / acropolis'; the LXX's rendering of the Millo (מִלּוֹ), the fortification of the city of David (1 Kings 9:15, 24; 11:27).

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὰς
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐπάλξεις

battlements / ramparts

Accusative

direct object of ᾠκοδόμησεν

→ object specification

ἐπαλξίς: 'battlement / rampart / parapet'; the defensive crenellations of the citadel.

αὐτῆς

its

Genitive

genitive of possession (of the Akra)

→ relational specification

αὐτῆς: meaning 'its'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession (of the Akra).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

διέκοψεν

breached / broke through

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · διακόπτω

main verb

→ constative aorist

διακόπτω: 'cut through / breach'; Solomon 'breached' (made a gap/passage in) the city of David — restructuring its fortifications (cf. the Millo closing the breach, 1 Kings 11:27).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πόλιν

city

Accusative

direct object of διέκοψεν

→ object specification

πόλις: 'city'; 'the city of David' (Zion), whose wall Solomon breached/restructured.

Δαυιδ

of David

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; 'city of David.'

οὕτως

thus / so

adverb of manner (connective)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὕτως: 'thus'; links the building to the queen's relocation that follows.

θυγάτηρ

daughter

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

θυγάτηρ: 'daughter'; Pharaoh's daughter, who moved from the city of David to her own house (cf. 1 Kings 9:24).

Φαραω

of Pharaoh

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Φαραω: indeclinable; the king of Egypt, the queen's father.

ἀνέβαινεν

went up

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀναβαίνω

main verb

→ imperfect (the move described as a process)

ἀναβαίνω: 'go up'; renders הָלַךְ; the queen 'went up' from the old city quarter to her newly built residence.

ἐκ

from / out of

preposition + genitive (origin)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐκ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (origin).

τῆς

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πόλεως

city

Genitive

genitive object of ἐκ

→ relational specification

πόλις: 'city'; 'the city of David,' her former residence.

Δαυιδ

of David

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; 'city of David.'

εἰς

to / into

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἶκον

house

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house'; the queen's own residence built by Solomon (1 Kings 7:8; 9:24).

αὐτῆς

her

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτῆς: meaning 'her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ὃν

which

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ὠκοδόμησεν)

→ participant reference

ὃς: relative pronoun, acc. masc. sg., referring to οἶκον.

ὠκοδόμησεν

he built

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · οἰκοδομέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist

οικοδομέω: 'build'; the house Solomon built for his Egyptian wife.

αὐτῇ

for her

Dative

dative of advantage

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῇ: meaning 'for her'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative of advantage.

τότε

then

temporal adverb

→ adverbial qualification

τότε: 'then / at that time'; marks the sequence — only afterward did he build the Akra.

ὠκοδόμησεν

he built

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · οἰκοδομέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

οικοδομέω: 'build'; restates the building of the Akra in temporal sequence with the queen's relocation.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄκραν

citadel / Akra (Millo)

Accusative

direct object of ᾠκοδόμησεν

→ object specification

ἄκρα: 'citadel'; the Millo, built 'then' — the LXX correlates its construction with the queen's move out of the old city (cf. 1 Kings 9:24; 11:27).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35g)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the king as offerer of sacrifice.

ἀνέφερεν

offered up

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀναφέρω

main verb

→ customary imperfect (regular thrice-yearly offering)

ἀναφέρω: 'offer up / bring up'; renders ἠγάγετο; the imperfect denotes Solomon's customary thrice-yearly sacrifices (cf. 1 Kings 9:25).

τρῆς

three (times)

numeral (adverbial: 'three times')

→ measure or count

τρῆς: 'three'; 'three times in the year' — the three pilgrimage feasts (cf. Exod 23:14; 1 Kings 9:25).

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (temporal)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (temporal).

τῷ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐνιαυτῷ

year

Dative

dative of time (within which)

→ sphere or reference

ἐνιαυτός: 'year'; 'in the year' = annually; the offerings recurred three times each year.

ὅλοκαυτώσεις

whole burnt offerings

Accusative

direct object of ἀνέφερεν

→ object specification

ὅλοκαύτωσις: 'whole burnt offering / holocaust'; renders ἤγαγε; sacrifices wholly consumed on the altar.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἰρηνικάς

peace offerings

Accusative

direct object of ἀνέφερεν (substantival adjective)

→ object specification

εἰρηνικός: 'pertaining to peace'; substantival 'peace offerings' (θυσίαι εἰρηνικαί), rendering דְּבִלְוָה; fellowship sacrifices shared by worshippers.

ἐπὶ

on / upon

preposition + accusative (location)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπὶ: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (location).

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θυσιαστήριον

altar

Accusative

accusative object of ἐπί

→ object specification

θυσιαστήριον: 'altar'; the temple altar of burnt offering Solomon built.

ὃ

which

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ὠκοδόμησεν)

→ participant reference

ὃς: relative pronoun, acc. neut. sg., referring to θυσιαστήριον.

ὠκοδόμησεν

he built

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · οἰκοδομέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist

οἰκοδομέω: 'build'; the altar Solomon built for the LORD.

τῷ

to the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίῳ

to the LORD

Dative

dative of advantage (the altar built 'to/for the LORD')

→ sphere or reference

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; the altar dedicated to YHWH.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐθυμία

burned incense

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · θυμιάω

main verb

→ customary imperfect

θυμιάω: 'burn incense / offer incense'; renders יָשַׁךְ; Solomon's customary incense-offering before YHWH (cf. 1 Kings 9:25).

ἐνώπιον

before

preposition + genitive (Hebraism: 'in the presence of')

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐνώπιον: 'before / in the presence of'; Hebraism rendering יָנִיף.

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive object of ἐνώπιον

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton; 'before the LORD' = in the temple presence.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

συνετέλεσεν

finished / completed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · συντελέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

συντελέω: 'complete / finish'; 'he finished the house' = brought the temple to completion (cf. 1 Kings 6:38; 9:25).

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἶκον

house / temple

Accusative

direct object of συνετέλεσεν

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house'; the temple, now completed.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35h)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

οὗτοι

these

Nominative

demonstrative pronoun (subject)

→ participant reference

οὗτος: 'these'; 'these are the officials' — introduces the roster of work-overseers (cf. 1 Kings 5:16; 9:23).

οἱ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

οἱ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄρχοντες

officials / chiefs

Nominative

predicate nominative (with οὗτοι)

→ participant prominence

ἄρχων: 'ruler / official / chief'; renders שָׂרֵי; the supervisors over Solomon's building works.

οἱ

the (ones)

Nominative

article (with attributive participle)

→ noun-phrase marking

οἱ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

καθεσταμένοι

appointed / set

Perf Pass Part Nom Masc Pl · καθίστημι

attributive participle (modifying ἄρχοντες)

→ resultative perfect (standing appointment)

καθίστημι: 'appoint / set in charge'; the perfect passive participle 'those appointed over the works' designates the standing corps of overseers.

ἐπὶ

over

preposition + accusative (oversight)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + accusative: 'over'; appointed 'over the works.'

τὰ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἔργα

works / projects

Accusative

accusative object of ἐπί

→ object specification

ἔργον: 'work / labor / project'; renders עֲמָלָה; Solomon's building enterprises.

τοῦ

of

Genitive

article (governing indeclinable Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

of Solomon

genitive of relationship (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; 'the works of Solomon.'

τρεῖς

three

numeral (with χιλιάδες)

→ measure or count

τρεῖς: 'three'; part of the tally 'three thousand six hundred.'

χιλιάδες

thousands

Nominative

predicate (number of overseers)

→ participant prominence

χιλιάς: 'thousand'; 'three thousand' (with six hundred) overseers (cf. 1 Kings 5:16).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἑξακόσιοι

six hundred

Nominative

numeral (with χιλιάδες, total 3,600)

→ measure or count

ἑξακόσιοι: 'six hundred'; completing the figure '3,600 overseers' (the LXX total; cf. MT variants).

ἐπιστάται

overseers / foremen

Nominative

nominative in apposition (the 3,600 = overseers)

→ participant prominence

ἐπιστάτης: 'overseer / superintendent / taskmaster'; renders בָּצֵר / בָּצִי ; foremen directing the corvée.

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

λαοῦ

people

Genitive

genitive (overseers 'of the people')

→ relational specification

λαός: 'people'; the laboring populace under the overseers' charge.

τῶν

the (ones)

Genitive

article (with substantival participle)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῶν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ποιούντων

doing / who do

Pres Act Part Gen Masc Pl · ποιέω

substantival participle (genitive, 'those doing the works')

→ customary present

ποιέω: 'do / perform'; 'those performing the works' = the laborers themselves.

τὰ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἔργα

works

Accusative

direct object of ποιούντων

→ object specification

ἔργον: 'work'; the labor performed on Solomon's projects.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35i)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ῥοκοδόμησεν

built

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · οἰκοδομέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

οἰκοδομέω: 'build'; introduces Solomon's store-cities and fortifications (cf. 1 Kings 9:15–19).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable place-name)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Assour

Asshur / Hazor

direct object of ῥοκοδόμησεν (indeclinable place-name)

→ participant identification

Assour: indeclinable place-name; here a Solomonic fortress-city (likely corresponding to Hazor, ḥṣṣṣ, in the MT list of 1 Kings 9:15).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable place-name)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Μαγδω

Magdo / Megiddo

direct object of ῥοκοδόμησεν (indeclinable place-name)

→ participant identification

Μαγδω: indeclinable; Megiddo (מגידו), a fortified store-city Solomon rebuilt (1 Kings 9:15).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable place-name)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Γαζερ

Gazer / Gezer

direct object of ῥοκοδόμησεν (indeclinable place-name)

→ participant identification

Γαζερ: indeclinable; Gezer (גזר), given to Solomon as Pharaoh's daughter's dowry and rebuilt (1 Kings 9:16–17).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable place-name)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Βαιθωρων

Beth-horon

direct object of ὠκοδόμησεν (indeclinable place-name)

→ participant identification

Βαιθωρων: indeclinable; Beth-horon (בֵּית הָחֶרֶם), a strategic pass-town Solomon fortified (1 Kings 9:17).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article (attributive)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐπάνω

upper

adverb used attributively ('the upper')

→ clausal contribution

ἐπάνω: 'above / upper'; 'Upper Beth-horon' (the elevation; cf. יְרֵכָה), distinguishing it from Lower Beth-horon.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὰ

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable place-name)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Βααλαθ

Baalath

direct object of ὠκοδόμησεν (indeclinable place-name)

→ participant identification

Βααλαθ: indeclinable; Baalath (בִּלְחָל), another store-city Solomon built (1 Kings 9:18).

πλὴν

however / only

adversative/restrictive particle (begins miscellany 35k)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

πλὴν: 'however / only / but'; introduces a chronological clarification — the cities were built after the temple and wall.

μετά

after

preposition + accusative (temporal, with articular infinitive)

→ spatial or relational framing

μετά + accusative: 'after'; with the articular infinitive 'after his building.'

τὸ

the

Accusative

article (governing articular infinitive)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἰκοδομῆσαι

to build / building

Aor Act Inf · οἰκοδομέω

articular infinitive (temporal, with μετά and acc. subject αὐτόν)

→ verbal action or state

οἰκοδομέω: 'build'; the articular infinitive μετά τὸ οἰκοδομῆσαι ('after building') sets the temporal sequence.

αὐτόν

he

Accusative

accusative subject of the infinitive οἰκοδομῆσαι

→ participant reference

αὐτός: accusative subject of the infinitive ('after he built').

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἶκον

house / temple

Accusative

direct object of οἰκοδομῆσαι

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house'; 'the house of the LORD' = the temple, built first.

τοῦ

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίου

of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton; 'the house of the LORD!'

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τὸ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

τείχος

wall

Accusative

direct object of οἰκοδομῆσαι

→ object specification

τείχος: 'wall'; the wall of Jerusalem, built before the store-cities.

Ιερουσαλημ

of Jerusalem

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: indeclinable; 'the wall of Jerusalem.'

κύκλω

round about

Dative

adverbial dative (of place: 'all around')

→ sphere or reference

κύκλος: 'circle'; the dative κύκλω ('round about') functions adverbially, rendering כִּכְלָו.

μετὰ

after

preposition + accusative (temporal)

→ spatial or relational framing

μετὰ + accusative: 'after'; μετὰ ταῦτα ('after these things') marks sequence.

ταῦτα

these things

Accusative

accusative object of μετὰ

→ object specification

οὗτος: 'these'; μετὰ ταῦτα ('afterward') — the cities came later.

ὠκοδόμησεν

he built

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · οἰκοδομέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

οἰκοδομέω: 'build'; 'afterward he built these cities' — clarifying construction order.

τὰς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πόλεις

cities

Accusative

direct object of ψκοδόμησεν

→ object specification

πόλις: 'city'; the store-cities and fortresses listed in 35i.

ταύτας

these

Accusative

demonstrative adjective (modifying πόλεις)

→ object specification

οὗτος: 'these'; the cities just named.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35i)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐν

in / while

preposition + dative (temporal, with articular infinitive)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: with the articular infinitive 'while David was yet living' (Hebraism, אַ + infinitive).

τῷ

the

Dative

article (governing articular infinitive)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἔτι

still / yet

adverb (with the infinitive ζῆν)

→ clausal contribution

ἔτι: 'still / yet'; 'while David was still living' — dating this charge to David's lifetime (a doublet of vv. 8–9).

Δαυιδ

David

accusative subject of the infinitive ζῆν (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; subject of the temporal infinitive.

ζῆν

to live / living

Pres Act Inf · ζάω

articular infinitive (temporal: 'while David was living')

→ present infinitive (the act of living)

ζάω: 'live'; ἐν τῷ ἔτι ... ζῆν ('while [David] was still living') is a Hebraizing temporal construction.

ἐνετείλατο

he charged

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · ἐντέλλομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἐντέλλομαι: 'command / charge'; the same verb as v. 1; David's charge to Solomon, here a doublet of the Shimei-charge of vv. 8–9.

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

dative indirect object (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; recipient of the charge.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: λέγων introducing the quoted charge, calquing אָמַרְתָּ.

ἰδοὺ

behold

Aor Mid Impv 2 Sg · ὁράω (frozen interjection)

presentative particle

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἰδοὺ: 'behold'; renders הִנֵּה; presents Shimei as in v. 8.

μετὰ

with

preposition + genitive (association)

→ spatial or relational framing

μετὰ + genitive: 'with'; 'with you (is) Shimei.'

σοῦ

you

Genitive

genitive object of μετὰ

→ relational specification

σοῦ: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive object of μετὰ.

Σεμεϊ

Shimei

subject of verbless clause (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σεμεϊ: indeclinable; the Benjamite (cf. v. 8); this is a doublet of David's earlier charge.

υἱός

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Σεμεϊ

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Gera.'

Γηρα

of Gera

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Γηρα: indeclinable; Shimei's father.

υἱός

son / member

Nominative

nominative in apposition (gentilic phrase)

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; here 'son of the seed of the Benjamite' — a fuller gentilic than v. 8 (where 'son of the Yemini').

σπέρματος

seed / lineage

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with υἱός)

→ relational specification

σπέρμα: 'seed / offspring / lineage'; 'son of the seed of the Benjamite' = of Benjaminite descent.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (governing indeclinable Ἰεμινί)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Ἰεμινί

Benjamite / Yemini

genitive of relationship (indeclinable gentilic, case via article)

→ participant identification

Ἰεμινί: indeclinable; 'the Benjamite' (יְמִינִי); Shimei's tribal origin (cf. v. 8).

ἐκ

from

preposition + genitive (origin)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐκ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (origin).

Χεβρων

Hebron

genitive of place (indeclinable, with ἐκ)

→ participant identification

Χεβρων: indeclinable; here Shimei's town is given as Hebron — a variant from v. 8, where Bahurim (Βαουρίμ) is named; a notable divergence within the LXX doublet.

οὗτος

this one / he

Nominative

demonstrative pronoun (subject; begins miscellany 35m)

→ participant reference

οὗτος: 'this one'; 'he cursed me' — resuming the indictment of Shimei (cf. αὐτός, v. 8).

κατηράσατό

cursed

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · καταράομαι

main verb (with cognate accusative κατάραν)

→ constative aorist

καταράομαι: 'curse'; with the cognate κατάραν, the Hebraism 'cursed a curse' (cf. v. 8).

με

me

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

με: meaning 'me'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

κατάραν

a curse

Accusative

cognate accusative (with κατηράσατο)

→ object specification

κατάραν: 'curse'; cognate accusative intensifying the cursing (cf. v. 8).

ὀδυνηράν

grievous / painful

Accusative

attributive adjective (modifying κατάραν)

→ object specification

ὀδυνηρός: 'grievous / painful'; renders תַּצְרִיחַ; the bitter curse (cf. v. 8).

ἐν

in / on

preposition + dative (temporal, with relative ἥ)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: 'on'; ἐν ἡ ἡμέρᾳ ('on which day') — here the temporal phrase uses ἐν (contrast the plain dative τῇ ἡμέρᾳ at v. 8).

ἣ

which

Dative

relative pronoun (dative of time, with ἡμέρᾳ)

→ participant reference or interest

ἣ: relative pronoun, dat. fem. sg.; 'on which (day).'

ἡμέρᾳ

day

Dative

dative of time

→ sphere or reference

ἡμέρᾳ: 'day'; the day of David's flight, when Shimei cursed him.

ἐπορευόμεν

I was going

Impf Mid Indic 1 Sg · πορεύομαι

verb of relative clause

→ imperfect (the journey in progress)

πορεύομαι: 'go'; David's flight 'to the camps' (cf. v. 8).

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

παρεμβολάς

camps / encampments

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

παρεμβολή: 'camp'; 'to the camps' (Mahanaïm), as v. 8.

καὶ

and / but

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35n)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αὐτός

he

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun)

→ participant reference

αὐτός: emphatic 'he himself'; Shimei coming down in submission.

κατέβαινεν

came down

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · καταβαίνω

main verb

→ imperfect (the descent, here imperfective; cf. aorist κατέβη at v. 8)

καταβαίνω: 'come down'; the imperfect κατέβαινεν here (vs. aorist κατέβη at v. 8) is a stylistic variant within the LXX doublet — Shimei descended to the Jordan to meet David.

εἰς

to / for

preposition + accusative (purpose: 'to meet')

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: with ἀπαντήν, 'to meet.'

ἀπαντήν

a meeting

Accusative

accusative (with εἰς: 'to meet me')

→ object specification

ἀπάντησις/ἀπαντή: 'meeting'; εἰς ἀπαντήν ('to meet'), Hebraism ΤΑΚΛΚΛ.

μοι

me

Dative

dative (object of the meeting-idiom; cf. genitive μου at v. 8)

→ participant reference or interest

ἐγώ: here dative μοι (vs. genitive μου at v. 8) — a minor variant in the doublet.

ἐπὶ

at / to

preposition + accusative (place toward; cf. εἰς at v. 8)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + accusative: 'to / at'; here ἐπὶ τὸν Ιορδάνην (vs. εἰς at v. 8), a variant within the doublet.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Ιορδάνην

Jordan

Accusative

accusative of place (with ἐπὶ)

→ object specification

Ιορδάνης: 'Jordan'; declined (acc. -ην); the river where Shimei met David.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὥμοσα

I swore

Aor Act Indic 1 Sg · ὅμνυμι

main verb

→ constative aorist

ὅμνυμι: 'swear'; David's oath of clemency to Shimei (cf. v. 8).

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

κατὰ

by

preposition + genitive (oath-formula; cf. ἐν at v. 8)

→ spatial or relational framing

κατὰ + genitive: in oaths 'by'; here 'by the LORD' (κατὰ τοῦ κυρίου), where v. 8 has ἐν κυρίῳ — a variant oath-construction in the doublet.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίου

the LORD

Genitive

genitive (object of κατά: oath sworn by YHWH)

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; the oath sworn by YHWH.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: λέγων introducing the oath's content.

εἰ

[surely not]

conditional particle (Hebraic oath-formula = emphatic negation)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

εἰ: in an oath, renders Hebrew דִּן as an emphatic negative ('I will surely not...'); cf. v. 8.

θανατωθήσεται

he shall be put to death

Fut Pass Indic 3 Sg · θανατόω

verb of oath-clause (3rd person; cf. 1st sg. θανατώσω at v. 8)

→ future (within the Hebraic oath-negation)

θανατόω: 'put to death'; here the passive 3rd-person θανατωθήσεται ('he shall be killed'), where v. 8 has the active 1st-person θανατώσω σε — a variant within the doublet, both negated by the εἰ-oath.

ἐν

by / with

preposition + dative (instrument)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'by'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (instrument).

ρόμφαία

sword

Dative

dative of instrument

→ sphere or reference

ρόμφαία: 'sword'; the means of death David swore to forgo (cf. v. 8).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 35o)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

νῦν

now

temporal adverb (discourse transition)

→ adverbial qualification

νῦν: 'now'; καὶ νῦν transitions to the verdict (cf. v. 9).

μὴ

not

negative particle (prohibitive; cf. οὐ μὴ at v. 9)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

μὴ: prohibitive with the aorist subjunctive; here simple μὴ (vs. emphatic οὐ μὴ at v. 9).

ἄθωώσης

hold guiltless

Aor Act Subj 2 Sg · ἄθωόω

prohibitive subjunctive (μὴ + aor. subj.)

→ prohibitive aorist subjunctive

ἄθωόω: 'hold guiltless / acquit'; renders חַיָּב; Solomon is charged not to leave Shimei unpunished (cf. v. 9).

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; grounds the charge in Solomon's prudence.

άνήρ

a man

Nominative

predicate nominative ('a prudent man')

→ participant prominence

άνήρ: 'man'; 'you are a prudent man' (cf. άνήρ σοφός at v. 9).

φρόνιμος

prudent / wise

Nominative

predicate adjective (modifying άνήρ)

→ participant prominence

φρόνιμος: 'prudent / sensible / wise'; here (vs. σοφός at v. 9) — a synonym-variant within the doublet; Solomon's discernment qualifies him to act.

σύ

you

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun; copula 'are' elided)

→ participant reference

σύ: emphatic 'you (are) a prudent man' (the copula εἶ of v. 9 is here omitted).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

γνώση

you will know

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · γνώσκω

main verb (predictive future)

→ predictive future

γνώσκω: 'know'; 'you will know what to do' (cf. v. 9).

ἃ

what

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ποιήσεις)

→ participant reference

ἃ: relative pronoun, neut. pl.; 'the things which you should do.'

ποιήσεις

you shall do

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · ποιέω

verb of relative clause

→ predictive/deliberative future

ποιέω: 'do'; what Solomon will do to Shimei (cf. v. 9).

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

κατάξεις

you shall bring down

Fut Act Indic 2 Sg · κατάγω

main verb (imperative future)

→ imperative future (death-charge)

κατάγω: 'bring down'; 'bring his gray head down in blood to Hades' (verbatim as v. 9).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πολιὰν

gray head / old age

Accusative

direct object of κατάξεις

→ object specification

πολιά: 'gray head'; metonymy for the aged Shimei (cf. vv. 6, 9).

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἐν

in / with

preposition + dative (manner)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (manner).

αἵματι

blood

Dative

dative of manner (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

αἷμα: 'blood'; 'in blood' = by a violent death (cf. v. 9).

εἰς

to

preposition + genitive (with ᾧδου)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (with ᾧδου).

ᾧδου

Hades / Sheol

Genitive

genitive of place (with εἰς: 'to Hades')

→ relational specification

ᾧδης: 'Hades / the grave'; renders ἡνῶ; εἰς ᾧδου completes the death-charge, closing the first miscellany (cf. vv. 6, 9).

36 καὶ ἐκάλεσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Σεμεῖ καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ οἰκοδόμησον σεαυτῷ οἶκον ἐν Ἱερουσαλημ καὶ κάθου ἐκεῖ καὶ οὐκ ἐξελεύσῃ ἐκεῖθεν οὐδαμοῦ

And the king summoned Shimei and said to him, 'Build yourself a house in Jerusalem and dwell there, and you shall not go out from there anywhere.'

Narrative: new scene (the Shimei episode resumes from v. 9)

καὶ ἐκάλεσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Σεμεῖ

The narrative returns to the last unfinished charge (vv. 8–9). Rather than executing Shimei outright, the wise Solomon devises house-arrest in Jerusalem, where Shimei can be watched. The command 'build ... dwell ... do not go out' confines him on pain of the death-condition specified in v. 37 — a snare that Shimei will eventually spring himself.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐκάλεσεν

summoned / called

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · καλέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

καλέω: 'call / summon'; renders נִקְרָא; Solomon summons Shimei to impose the terms of confinement.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Σεμεὶ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σεμεὶ

Shimei

direct object of ἐκάλεσεν (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σεμεὶ: indeclinable; the Benjamite, now placed under house-arrest.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces the terms of confinement.

αὐτῷ

to him

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

οἰκοδόμησον

build

Aor Act Impv 2 Sg · οἰκοδομέω

main verb (imperative)

→ aorist imperative (command)

οἰκοδομέω: 'build'; 'build yourself a house in Jerusalem' — fixing Shimei's residence under royal surveillance.

σεαυτῷ

for yourself

Dative

reflexive pronoun (dative of advantage)

→ participant reference or interest

σεαυτοῦ: 'yourself'; reflexive 'for yourself.'

οἶκον

house

Accusative

direct object of οἰκοδόμησον

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house'; Shimei's residence in the capital.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

Ιερουσαλημ

Jerusalem

dative of place (indeclinable, with ἐν)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: indeclinable; the city of Shimei's confinement.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

κάθου

dwell / stay

Pres Mid Impv 2 Sg · κάθηναι

main verb (imperative)

→ present imperative (durative: 'remain')

κάθηναι: 'sit / dwell / remain'; the present imperative κάθου ('stay put') enjoins continuous residence.

ἐκεῖ

there

adverb of place

→ adverbial qualification

ἐκεῖ: 'there'; 'dwell there' — in Jerusalem.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

οὐκ

not

negative particle (with future, prohibitive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of the future ἐξελεύση — the prohibition of departure.

ἐξελεύση

you shall go out

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · ἐξέρχομαι

main verb (prohibitive future)

→ imperatival/prohibitive future ('you shall not go out')

ἐξέρχομαι: 'go out'; the negated future forbids Shimei from leaving the city — the condition whose breach means death (v. 37).

ἐκεῖθεν

from there

adverb of place (source)

→ clausal contribution

ἐκεῖθεν: 'from there'; from Jerusalem.

οὐδαμοῦ

anywhere / nowhere

adverb of place (with negative: 'to nowhere')

→ clausal contribution

οὐδαμοῦ: 'nowhere'; reinforces the total ban on leaving — Shimei may go nowhere from the city.

37 καὶ ἔσται ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῆς ἐξόδου σου καὶ διαβήσῃ τὸν χειμάρρουν Κεδρων γινώσκων γνῶσῃ ὅτι θανάτῳ ἀποθανῇ τὸ αἷμά σου ἔσται ἐπὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν σου καὶ ὥρκισεν αὐτὸν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐκείνῃ

And it shall be, on the day you go out and cross the Wadi Kidron, know for certain that you shall surely die; your blood shall be upon your own head.' And the king put him under oath on that day.

Direct speech: the death-condition (the terms of the oath)

καὶ ἔσται ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῆς ἐξόδου σου

Solomon names the trigger: crossing the Kidron (the wadi marking the city's eastern boundary). The emphatic infinitive-absolute constructions γινώσκων γνῶσῃ ('know for certain') and θανάτῳ ἀποθανῇ ('you shall surely die') are Hebraisms calquing וְיָדַעַתְּ and וּמָתָה (cf. Gen 2:17). The self-incrimination formula 'your blood on your own head' transfers all guilt to Shimei. The king binds him by oath (ὥρκισεν).

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἔσται
it shall be

Fut Mid Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

main verb (apodosis-introducing formula)

→ predictive future (Hebraizing 'and it shall come to pass')

εἰμί (fut.): καὶ ἔσται ('and it shall be / come to pass', וְיָבֹא) is a Hebraizing apodosis-introducer setting up the conditional death-sentence.

ἐν
on

preposition + dative (temporal)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (temporal).

τῇ
the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέρᾳ
day

Dative

dative of time (when)

→ sphere or reference

ἡμέρᾳ: 'day'; 'on the day of your going out' — the day Shimei breaks confinement.

τῆς
of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐξόδου
going out / departure

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with ἡμέρᾳ)

→ relational specification

ἐξοδος: 'going out / departure / exodus'; here Shimei's leaving the city — the forbidden act.

σου
your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction (Hebraizing apodosis-καί)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: the redundant καί before διαβήση reflects a Hebraizing protasis-apodosis linkage.

διαβήση

you cross over

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · διαβαίνω

verb of temporal/conditional clause

→ predictive future (the triggering act)

διαβαίνω: 'cross over'; renders עָבַר; crossing the Kidron — the boundary whose breach triggers the death-sentence.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

χειμάρρουν

wadi / torrent-valley

Accusative

direct object of διαβήση

→ object specification

χείμαρρος: 'winter-stream / wadi / torrent-valley'; renders נַחַל; the Kidron ravine east of Jerusalem, the city's boundary.

Κεδρων

Kidron

genitive/appositional (indeclinable place-name)

→ participant identification

Κεδρων: transliteration of קִדְרֹן (Kidron); indeclinable; the wadi marking Jerusalem's eastern limit.

γινώσκων

knowing

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · γινώσκω

participle (infinitive-absolute Hebraism, intensifying γνώση)

→ intensive (Hebraizing emphatic certainty)

γινώσκω: the participle + finite verb γινώσκων γνώση ('knowing you shall know' = 'know for certain') calques the Hebrew infinitive absolute יָדַעַת יָדִיעַ, expressing absolute certainty.

γνώση

you shall know

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · γινώσκω

main verb (apodosis; with intensifying participle)

→ predictive future (emphatic)

γινώσκω: 'know'; the finite verb of the emphatic 'know for certain' construction.

ὅτι

that

conjunction (content clause)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'that'; introduces the certain consequence.

θανάτω

by death / surely

Dative

cognate dative (infinitive-absolute Hebraism, with ἀποθανῆ)

→ sphere or reference

θάνατος: 'death'; the cognate dative θανάτω ἀποθανῆ ('by death you shall die' = 'you shall surely die') renders the Hebrew infinitive absolute מוֹת תָּמוּת (cf. Gen 2:17).

ἀποθανῆ

you shall die

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · ἀποθνήσκω

main verb of content clause (with cognate dative)

→ predictive future (emphatic, the sworn penalty)

ἀποθνήσκω: 'die'; the emphatic 'you shall surely die' states the inexorable penalty for breaking confinement.

τὸ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αἷμά

blood

Nominative

subject of ἔσται

→ participant prominence

αἷμα: 'blood / bloodguilt'; 'your blood shall be on your own head' — Shimei alone will bear the guilt of his death.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἔσται

shall be

Fut Mid Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

main verb

→ predictive future

εἰμί (fut.): 'be'; 'your blood shall be on your head' — the self-incrimination formula (cf. Josh 2:19; 2 Sam 1:16).

ἐπὶ

on

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπὶ: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κεφαλὴν

head

Accusative

accusative of direction (with ἐπὶ)

→ object specification

κεφαλὴ: 'head'; 'on your own head' = the bloodguilt rests solely on Shimei, exonerating the king.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὥρκισεν

put under oath / made swear

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ὀρκίζω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ὀρκίζω: 'make swear / put under oath / adjure'; renders עֲבַדְתִּי; the king binds Shimei by oath to the confinement terms, making any breach perjury.

αὐτὸν

him

Accusative

direct object (Shimei)

→ participant reference

αὐτὸν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object (Shimei).

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon administering the oath.

ἐν

on

preposition + dative (temporal)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'on'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (temporal).

τῇ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέρα

day

Dative

dative of time

→ sphere or reference

ἡμέρα: 'day'; 'on that day' the oath was administered.

ἐκείνη

that

Dative

demonstrative adjective (modifying ἡμέρα)

→ sphere or reference

ἐκεῖνος: 'that'; deictic 'that day' of the oath.

38 καὶ εἶπεν Σεμεῖ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀγαθὸν τὸ ῥῆμα ὃ ἐλάλησας κύριέ μου βασιλεῦ οὕτω ποιήσει ὁ δοῦλός σου καὶ ἐκάθισεν Σεμεῖ ἐν Ἱερουσαλὴμ τρία ἔτη

And Shimei said to the king, 'The word that you have spoken is good, my lord the king; so will your servant do.' And Shimei dwelt in Jerusalem three years.

Direct speech + narrative: Shimei's submission and the three-year interval

καὶ εἶπεν Σεμεῖ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα

Shimei accepts the terms with deferential court-language ('the word is good, my lord the king ... your servant will do so'). The narrator's note that he 'dwelt in Jerusalem three years' marks the lapse of time before the fatal breach (vv. 39–40); the κύριε here is the human honorific 'my lord' addressed to the king, not the divine name.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Shimei's submissive reply.

Σεμεῖ

Shimei

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σεμεῖ: indeclinable; accepting the king's terms.

πρὸς

to

preposition + accusative (direction of speech)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction of speech).

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλέα

king

Accusative

accusative object of *πρός*

→ object specification

βασιλεύς: 'king'; Solomon, the addressee.

ἀγαθόν

good

Nominative

predicate adjective (verbless: 'the word is good')

→ participant prominence

ἀγαθός: 'good'; renders *טוב*; 'the word is good' = the terms are acceptable — court-language of compliant assent.

τὸ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ῥῆμα

word / matter

Nominative

subject of the verbless clause

→ participant prominence

ῥῆμα: 'word / saying / matter'; renders *רִצָּה*; the king's stipulation, which Shimei accepts.

ὃ

which

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of *ἐλάλησας*)

→ participant reference

ὃς: relative pronoun, acc. neut. sg., referring to *ῥῆμα*.

ἐλάλησας

you have spoken

Aor Act Indic 2 Sg · *λαλέω*

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist

λαλέω: 'speak'; 'the word you spoke' = the king's command.

κύριέ

lord

Vocative

vocative (honorific address to the king)

→ direct address

κύριος: here NOT the Tetragrammaton but the human honorific 'my lord' (*יְיָ אֱלֹהֵינוּ*), addressed to the king as a mark of deference.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with *κύριε*)

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship (with *κύριε*).

βασιλεῦ

O king

Vocative

vocative (in apposition to *κύριε*)

→ direct address

βασιλεύς: 'king'; vocative 'my lord the king' — full deferential address.

οὕτω

so / thus

adverb of manner

→ adverbial qualification

οὕτω(ς): 'so / thus'; 'so will your servant do' = I will comply exactly.

ποιήσει

will do

Fut Act Indic 3 Sg · *ποιέω*

main verb (promissory future)

→ promissory future (pledge of compliance)

ποιέω: 'do'; Shimei's pledge to obey, spoken in the deferential third person ('your servant will do').

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δοῦλος

servant / slave

Nominative

subject of ποιήσει (deferential self-reference)

→ participant prominence

δοῦλος: 'slave / servant'; renders Τζυ; 'your servant' is Shimei's deferential self-designation before the king.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐκάθισεν

dwelt / remained

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · καθίζω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the period of residence)

καθίζω: 'sit / settle / dwell'; Shimei kept the terms, dwelling in Jerusalem for the stated interval.

Σεμεϊ

Shimei

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σεμεϊ: indeclinable; complying for a time.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

Ιερουσαλημ

Jerusalem

dative of place (indeclinable, with ἐν)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: indeclinable; the place of confinement.

τρία

three

Accusative

numeral (with ἔτη)

→ measure or count

τρεις, τρία: 'three'; the three-year interval before the fatal breach.

ἔτη

years

Accusative

accusative of extent of time

→ object specification

ἔτος: 'year'; 'three years' of compliance, after which Shimei leaves the city (v. 39).

39 καὶ ἐγενήθη μετὰ τρία ἔτη καὶ ἀπέδρασαν δύο δοῦλοι τοῦ Σεμεὶ πρὸς Αἰχίους υἱὸν Μααχα βασιλέα Γεθ καὶ ἀπηγγέλη τῷ Σεμεὶ λέγοντες ἰδοὺ οἱ δοῦλοί σου ἐν Γεθ

And it came to pass after three years that two of Shimei's slaves ran away to Achish son of Maacah, king of Gath; and it was reported to Shimei, saying, 'Behold, your slaves are in Gath.'

Narrative: the precipitating incident (runaway slaves)

καὶ ἐγενήθη μετὰ τρία ἔτη

The Hebraizing temporal formula καὶ ἐγενήθη ('and it came to pass', יָהִי) opens the episode that springs the trap: two of Shimei's slaves flee to Achish king of Gath (the Philistine city where David once took refuge, 1 Sam 27). The report 'your slaves are in Gath' tempts Shimei to pursue them — and thus to leave Jerusalem, breaking his oath.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐγενήθη

it came to pass

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · γίνομαι

main verb (temporal formula)

→ constative aorist (Hebraizing 'and it came to pass')

γίνομαι: 'become / happen'; καὶ ἐγενήθη ('and it came to pass', יָהִי) is a Hebraizing narrative temporal-setting formula.

μετὰ

after

preposition + accusative (temporal)

→ spatial or relational framing

μετά + accusative: 'after'; 'after three years.'

τρία

three

Accusative

numeral (with ἔτη)

→ measure or count

τρεις, τρία: 'three'; the interval of v. 38, now elapsed.

ἔτη

years

Accusative

accusative of extent of time

→ object specification

ἔτος: 'year'; the three years of confinement.

καὶ

and / that

coordinate conjunction (Hebraizing apodosis-καί)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: the apodosis-καί after καὶ ἐγενήθη, a Hebraism (וְ... יָהִי).

ἀπέδρασαν

ran away

Aor Act Indic 3 Pl · ἀποδιδράσκω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀποδιδράσκω: 'run away / flee'; renders פָּלַח; the slaves' flight is the catalyst (the same verb used of David's flight in v. 7).

δύο

two

Nominative

numeral (modifying δοῦλοι)

→ measure or count

δύο: 'two'; two of Shimei's slaves.

δοῦλοι

slaves

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

δοῦλος: 'slave / servant'; renders דָּבָר;
Shimei's fugitive slaves.

τοῦ

of

Genitive

article (governing indeclinable Σεμεϊ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and
the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σεμεϊ

of Shimei

genitive of possession (indeclinable, case via
article)

→ participant identification

Σεμεϊ: indeclinable; the slaves' owner.

πρὸς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the
relation signaled by preposition +
accusative (direction).

Αγχους

Achish

accusative object of πρὸς (indeclinable proper
noun)

→ participant identification

Αγχους: transliteration of אֲחִישׁ (Achish);
treated as indeclinable; the Philistine king
of Gath (cf. 1 Sam 21:10; 27:2).

υἱὸν

son

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Αγχους

→ object specification

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Maacah.'

Μααχα

of Maacah

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Μααχα: transliteration of מַאכָּה (Maacah);
indeclinable; Achish's father.

βασιλέα

king

Accusative

accusative in apposition to Αγχους

→ object specification

βασιλεύς: 'king'; Achish, king of the
Philistine city of Gath.

Γεθ

of Gath

genitive of relationship (indeclinable place-name)

→ participant identification

Γεθ: transliteration of גֶּת (Gath);
indeclinable; a Philistine city, refuge of the
runaway slaves.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle
linking this unit with the surrounding
discourse.

ἀπηγγέλη

it was reported

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · ἀπαγγέλλω

main verb (impersonal passive)

→ constative aorist

ἀπαγγέλλω: 'report / announce'; the
impersonal passive 'it was reported to
Shimei.'

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Σεμεϊ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and
the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σεμεϊ Shimei <i>dative indirect object (indeclinable, case via article)</i> → participant identification Σεμεϊ: indeclinable; the recipient of the report.	λέγοντες saying Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · λέγω <i>participle (constructio ad sensum, Hebraism)</i> → present participle (speech accompanying the objecting) λέγω: the masc.-pl. participle after the impersonal passive (constructio ad sensum) calques גמל (cf. v. 29).	ἰδοὺ behold Aor Mid Impv 2 Sg · ὁράω (frozen interjection) <i>presentative particle</i> → discourse linkage or contrast ἰδοὺ: 'behold'; renders הִנֵּה; vividly presents the news of the slaves' whereabouts.	οἱ the Nominative <i>article</i> → noun-phrase marking οἱ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.
δοῦλοι slaves Nominative <i>subject of the verbless clause</i> → participant prominence δοῦλος: 'slave'; 'your slaves are in Gath' — the report that lures Shimei out.	σου your Genitive <i>genitive of possession</i> → relational specification σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.	ἐν in <i>preposition + dative (locative)</i> → spatial or relational framing ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).	Γεθ Gath <i>dative of place (indeclinable, with ἐν)</i> → participant identification Γεθ: indeclinable; the slaves' refuge in Philistia.

40 καὶ ἀνέστη Σεμεϊ καὶ ἐπέσαξε τὴν ὄνον αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐπορεύθη εἰς Γεθ πρὸς Αἰχους τοῦ ἐκζητῆσαι τοὺς δούλους αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐπορεύθη Σεμεϊ καὶ ἤγαγεν τοὺς δούλους αὐτοῦ ἐκ Γεθ

And Shimei arose and saddled his donkey and went to Gath, to Achish, to seek out his slaves; and Shimei went and brought his slaves back from Gath.

Narrative: Shimei breaks confinement (the fatal act)

καὶ ἀνέστη Σεμεϊ

The chain of verbs ἀνέστη ... ἐπέσαξε ... ἐπορεύθη ('arose ... saddled ... went') traces Shimei's decisive, self-condemning action: leaving Jerusalem and crossing the boundary to retrieve his slaves. By prioritizing two slaves over his sworn life, Shimei seals his own fate; the genitive articular infinitive τοῦ ἐκζητῆσαι ('to seek out') gives his (fatally short-sighted) purpose.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀνέστη

arose

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀνίστημι

main verb

→ constative aorist (ingressive: 'set out')

ἀνίστημι: 'rise / arise / set out'; renders סִפָּק ; Shimei acts decisively — to his own ruin.

Σεμεί

Shimei

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σεμεί: indeclinable; the one breaking his confinement.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐπέσασε

saddled

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἐπισάσσω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἐπισάσσω: 'saddle / put a saddle on'; renders שָׂבַק ; Shimei readies his mount for the forbidden journey.

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ὄνον

donkey / ass

Accusative

direct object of ἐπέσασε

→ object specification

ὄνος: 'donkey / ass'; renders רִמְכָּה ; Shimei's mount for the trip to Gath.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐπορεύθη

went

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · πορεύομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist (the forbidden departure)

πορεύομαι: 'go / travel'; Shimei's departure from Jerusalem — the breach of his oath.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

Γεθ

Gath

accusative of direction (indeclinable, with εἰς)

→ participant identification

Γεθ: indeclinable; the Philistine city, his destination.

πρὸς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

Αγχους

Achish

accusative object of πρὸς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Αγχους: indeclinable; the king of Gath, to whom the slaves fled.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (governing articular infinitive of purpose)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐκζητῆσαι

to seek out

Aor Act Inf · ἐκζητέω

articular infinitive of purpose (τοῦ + inf.)

→ aorist infinitive (purpose of the coming)

ἐκζητέω: 'seek out / search for'; the purpose infinitive τοῦ ἐκζητῆσαι ('to seek out') gives Shimei's fatal motive — retrieving his slaves.

τοὺς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοὺς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δούλους

slaves

Accusative

direct object of ἐκζητῆσαι

→ object specification

δοῦλος: 'slave'; the runaways Shimei sought.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐπορεύθη

went

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · πορεύομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

πορεύομαι: 'go'; restates Shimei's journey, emphasizing the completed round-trip.

Σεμεϊ

Shimei

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σεμεϊ: indeclinable.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἤγαγεν

brought / led

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἄγω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἄγω: 'lead / bring'; Shimei brought his recovered slaves back — completing the journey that doomed him.

τοὺς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοὺς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δούλους

slaves

Accusative

direct object of ἤγαγεν

→ object specification

δοῦλος: 'slave'; the recovered runaways.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἐκ

from

preposition + genitive (source)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐκ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (source).

Γεθ

Gath

genitive of place (indeclinable, with ἐκ)

→ participant identification

Γεθ: indeclinable; the place from which Shimei retrieved his slaves.

41 καὶ ἀπηγγέλη τῷ Σαλωμων λέγοντες ὅτι ἐπορεύθη Σεμεὶ ἐξ Ιερουσαλημ εἰς Γεθ καὶ ἀπέστρεψεν τοὺς δούλους αὐτοῦ

And it was reported to Solomon, saying, 'Shimei has gone from Jerusalem to Gath and has brought back his slaves.'

Narrative: the breach reported to the king

καὶ ἀπηγγέλη τῷ Σαλωμων

The report reaches Solomon — the violation is now on record. The wording precisely matches the oath's condition ('went from Jerusalem to Gath'), so the breach is legally unambiguous. The constructio ad sensum λέγοντες again marks the impersonal report (cf. vv. 29, 39).

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπηγγέλη
it was reported

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · ἀπαγγέλλω

main verb (impersonal passive)

→ constative aorist

ἀπαγγέλλω: 'report'; the impersonal passive 'it was reported to Solomon' — the breach reaches the king.

τῷ
to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων
Solomon

dative indirect object (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the recipient of the report.

λέγοντες
saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · λέγω

participle (constructio ad sensum, Hebraism)

→ present participle (speech accompanying the objecting)

λέγω: the masc.-pl. participle after impersonal ἀπηγγέλη (constructio ad sensum), calquing רמז.

ὅτι
that

conjunction (recitative)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'that'; introduces the content of the report.

ἐπορεύθη
has gone

Aor Pass Indic 3 Sg · πορεύομαι

verb of reported clause

→ constative aorist

πορεύομαι: 'go'; the report states the very act forbidden by the oath.

Σεμεϊ
Shimei

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σεμεϊ: indeclinable; the oath-breaker.

ἐξ
from / out of

preposition + genitive (source)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐξ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (source).

Ιερουσαλημ
Jerusalem

genitive of source (indeclinable, with ἐξ)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: indeclinable; the city Shimei was forbidden to leave.

εἰς
to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

Γεθ
Gath

accusative of direction (indeclinable, with εἰς)

→ participant identification

Γεθ: indeclinable; Shimei's forbidden destination.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέστρεψεν

brought back

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποστρέφω

verb of reported clause

→ constative aorist

ἀποστρέφω: 'turn back / bring back'; here transitive 'brought back his slaves' — completing the report of the round-trip.

τοὺς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοὺς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δούλους

slaves

Accusative

direct object of ἀπέστρεψεν

→ object specification

δούλος: 'slave'; the recovered runaways.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

42 καὶ ἀπέστειλεν ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ ἐκάλεσεν τὸν Σεμεὶ καὶ εἶπεν πρὸς αὐτόν οὐχὶ ὥρκισά σε κατὰ τοῦ κυρίου καὶ ἐπεμαρτυράμην σοι λέγων ἐν ᾗ ἂν ἡμέρα ἐξέλθῃς ἐξ Ιερουσαλημ καὶ πορευθῇς εἰς δεξιὰ ἢ εἰς ἀριστερά γινώσκων γνώση ὅτι θανάτῳ ἀποθανῇ

And the king sent and summoned Shimei and said to him, 'Did I not put you under oath by the LORD and solemnly warn you, saying, On the day you go out from Jerusalem and travel anywhere, to right or to left, know for certain that you shall surely die?'

Direct speech: Solomon's prosecuting question (the oath invoked) καὶ ἀπέστειλεν ὁ βασιλεὺς

Solomon summons Shimei and prosecutes him with a rhetorical question (οὐχί, expecting 'yes') recalling the oath and warning of v. 37. The merism 'to right or to left' makes the prohibition absolute (any departure whatever). The repeated emphatic infinitive-absolute Hebraisms γινώσκων γνώση ... θανάτῳ ἀποθανῇ verbatim echo v. 37, establishing that Shimei knew the terms exactly.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέστειλεν

sent

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποστέλλω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀποστέλλω: 'send'; Solomon sends to summon the oath-breaker.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐκάλεσεν

summoned

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · καλέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

καλέω: 'call / summon'; Solomon calls Shimei to account.

τὸν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable Σεμεὶ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σεμεὶ

Shimei

direct object of ἐκάλεσεν (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σεμεὶ: indeclinable; summoned to judgment.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν

said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces Solomon's prosecuting question.

πρὸς

to

preposition + accusative (direction of speech)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction of speech).

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

accusative object of πρὸς

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as accusative object of πρὸς.

οὐχί

did not / surely

interrogative negative (expecting affirmative answer)

→ clausal contribution

οὐχί: emphatic form of οὐ; introduces a rhetorical question expecting 'yes' — 'Did I not (surely) put you under oath?'

ὥρκισά

put under oath

Aor Act Indic 1 Sg · ὀρκίζω

main verb of question

→ constative aorist

ὀρκίζω: 'make swear / put under oath'; recalls the oath administered in v. 37.

σε

you

Accusative

direct object

→ participant reference

σε: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object.

κατά

by

preposition + genitive (oath-formula)

→ spatial or relational framing

κατά + genitive: 'by'; 'by the LORD' — the oath sworn before YHWH.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κυρίου

the LORD

Genitive

genitive (object of κατά: oath by YHWH)

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; the oath bound Shimei before YHWH, so its breach is sacrilege.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐπεμαρτυράμην

solemnly warned / testified

Aor Mid Indic 1 Sg · ἐπιμαρτύρομαι

main verb of question

→ constative aorist

ἐπιμαρτύρομαι: 'testify / charge solemnly / warn'; renders טָעַן; Solomon solemnly warned Shimei of the consequences.

σοι

you

Dative

dative indirect object

→ participant reference or interest

σοι: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative indirect object.

λέγων

saying

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · λέγω

circumstantial participle (speech-introducing)

→ durative present participle (Hebraizing speech-marker)

λέγω: λέγων introducing the recalled warning.

ἐν

on

preposition + dative (temporal, with relative ἥ)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: 'on'; ἐν ἡ ἅν ἡμέρᾳ ('on whatever day')
— indefinite temporal clause.

ἥ

whatever

Dative

relative pronoun (dative of time, with ἅν)

→ participant reference or interest

ῥς: relative pronoun, dat. fem. sg.; with ἅν, 'on whatever day!'

ἅν

[ever]

modal particle (indefinite relative, with subjunctive)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἅν: modal particle marking the temporal clause as indefinite ('on whatever day you go out').

ἡμέρα

day

Dative

dative of time

→ sphere or reference

ἡμέρα: 'day'; the day of any departure.

ἐξέλθης

you go out

Aor Act Subj 2 Sg · ἐξέρχομαι

verb of indefinite temporal clause (subjunctive with ἅν)

→ ingressive aorist subjunctive (entering upon a campaign)

ἐξέρχομαι: 'go out'; leaving Jerusalem — the forbidden act.

ἐξ

from

preposition + genitive (source)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐξ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (source).

Ιερουσαλημ

Jerusalem

genitive of source (indeclinable, with ἐξ)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: indeclinable; the city of confinement.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

πορευθῆς

you travel / go

Aor Pass Subj 2 Sg · πορεύομαι

verb of indefinite temporal clause (subjunctive)

→ ingressive aorist subjunctive (the walking of covenant life)

πορεύομαι: 'go / travel'; any movement away from the city, specified by the merism that follows.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

δεξιὰ

right

Accusative

accusative of direction (substantival adjective)

→ object specification

δεξιός: 'right (hand/side)'; 'to the right or to the left' is a merism for 'anywhere at all' (cf. Deut 5:32).

ἢ

or

disjunctive conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ἢ: 'or'; joins the two poles of the merism.

εἰς

to

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction).

ἀριστερά

left

Accusative

accusative of direction (substantival adjective)

→ object specification

ἀριστερός: 'left (hand/side)'; the second pole of the merism 'right or left' = in any direction whatever.

γινώσκων

knowing

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · γινώσκω

participle (infinitive-absolute Hebraism, intensifying γνώση)

→ intensive (emphatic certainty)

γινώσκω: γινώσκων γνώση ('know for certain'), the Hebraizing emphatic construction (גִּינְיֹשְׁקוֹן גִּנְיֹשָׁה), verbatim from v. 37.

γνώση

you shall know

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · γινώσκω

main verb (apodosis)

→ predictive future (emphatic)

γινώσκω: 'know'; the finite verb of the 'know for certain' construction.

ὅτι

that

conjunction (content clause)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'that'; introduces the certain penalty.

θανάτῳ

by death / surely

Dative

cognate dative (infinitive-absolute Hebraism, with ἀποθανῆ)

→ sphere or reference

θάνατος: 'death'; θανάτῳ ἀποθανῆ ('you shall surely die'), the Hebraizing emphatic (מָוֶת מְאֹדָּה), verbatim from v. 37.

ἀποθανῆ

you shall die

Fut Mid Indic 2 Sg · ἀποθνήσκω

main verb of content clause

→ predictive future (the sworn penalty)

ἀποθνήσκω: 'die'; the inexorable death-penalty for breaking confinement, which Shimei has now incurred.

43 καὶ τί ὅτι οὐκ ἐφύλαξας τὸν ὅρκον κυρίου καὶ τὴν ἐντολὴν ἣν ἐνετειλάμην κατὰ σοῦ

Why then have you not kept the oath of the LORD and the command that I commanded you?

Direct speech: the accusing question (the charge made explicit) καὶ τί ὅτι

Solomon presses the charge with τί ὅτι ('why is it that?'), naming the double violation: the oath of the LORD and the king's command. The phrasing 'oath of the LORD' (ὅρκον κυρίου) underscores that Shimei has sinned against God, not merely the king — establishing the religious-legal ground for execution.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τί
why

interrogative pronoun (with ὅτι: 'why is it that?')

→ participant reference

τίς: interrogative; τί ὅτι ('why is it that?', לָמָּה) demands account for the breach.

ὅτι
that

conjunction (with τί, idiomatic interrogative)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: in the idiom τί ὅτι ('why is it that'), introducing the reproach.

οὐκ
not

negative particle

→ discourse linkage or contrast

οὐ: negation of ἐφύλαξας — the failure to keep the oath.

ἐφύλαξας
you kept

Aor Act Indic 2 Sg · φυλάσσω

main verb of question

→ constative aorist (the failure)

φυλάσσω: 'keep / guard / observe'; renders הִשָּׁמַר ; Shimei failed to 'keep' the oath — the same verb of covenant-keeping used in David's charge (v. 3), here of a broken oath.

τὸν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ὅρκον
oath

Accusative

direct object of ἐφύλαξας

→ object specification

ὅρκος: 'oath'; renders הַבְּרִית ; 'the oath of the LORD' — sworn before YHWH (v. 37), so its breach is against God.

κυρίου
of the LORD

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with ὅρκον)

→ relational specification

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה ; 'the oath of the LORD' = the oath sworn in YHWH's name.

καὶ and <i>coordinate conjunction</i> → discourse linkage or contrast καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.	τὴν the Accusative <i>article</i> → noun-phrase marking τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.	ἐντολήν command Accusative <i>direct object of ἐφύλαξας (second object)</i> → object specification ἐντολή: 'command / commandment'; renders תִּצַּח; the king's confinement-command, also violated.	ἣν which Accusative <i>relative pronoun (object of ἐνετείλαμην)</i> → participant reference ἣς: relative pronoun, acc. fem. sg., referring to ἐντολήν.
ἐνετείλαμην I commanded Aor Mid Indic 1 Sg · ἐντέλλομαι <i>verb of relative clause</i> → constative aorist ἐντέλλομαι: 'command / charge'; the king's command laid on Shimei (v. 36–37).	κατὰ concerning / against <i>preposition + genitive ('against / concerning you')</i> → spatial or relational framing κατὰ + genitive: here 'against / with respect to you' — the command directed at Shimei.	σοῦ you Genitive <i>genitive object of κατὰ</i> → relational specification σοῦ: meaning 'you'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive object of κατὰ.	

44 καὶ εἶπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς Σεμεὶ σὺ οἶδας πᾶσαν τὴν κακίαν σου ἣν ἔγνω ἡ καρδία σου ἃ ἐποίησας τῷ Δαυιδ τῷ πατρί μου καὶ ἀνταπέδωκεν κύριος τὴν κακίαν σου εἰς κεφαλὴν σου

And the king said to Shimei, 'You yourself know all the evil that your heart is aware of, which you did to David my father; and the LORD has repaid your evil on your own head.'

Direct speech: the comprehensive indictment (older guilt invoked) καὶ εἶπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς Σεμεὶ

Solomon widens the charge beyond the oath-breach to Shimei's whole record of malice against David (the cursing at Bahurim, v. 8). The appeal to Shimei's own conscience ('the evil your heart knows') makes the sentence morally self-evident, and the talionic formula ἀνταπέδωκεν κύριος ... εἰς κεφαλὴν σου ('the LORD has repaid your evil on your head') frames the execution, like Joab's (v. 32–33), as divine requital.

καὶ
and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἶπεν
said

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · λέγω

main verb (speech-introducing)

→ constative aorist

λέγω: introduces the comprehensive indictment.

ὁ
the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς
king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon as judge.

πρὸς
to

preposition + accusative (direction of speech)

→ spatial or relational framing

πρὸς: meaning 'to'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (direction of speech).

Σεμεῖ
Shimei

accusative object of πρὸς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σεμεῖ: indeclinable; the condemned man.

σύ
you

Nominative

subject (emphatic pronoun)

→ participant reference

σύ: emphatic 'you yourself know' — appealing to Shimei's own conscience.

οἶδα
know

Perf Act Indic 2 Sg · οἶδα

main verb (perfect with present sense)

→ stative perfect (settled awareness)

οἶδα: 'know'; Shimei is fully aware of his own guilt — his conscience condemns him.

πᾶσαν
all

Accusative

adjective (modifying κακίαν)

→ object specification

πᾶς: 'all'; 'all the evil' — the totality of Shimei's wrongdoing.

τὴν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κακίαν
evil / wickedness

Accusative

direct object of οἶδας

→ object specification

κακία: 'evil / wickedness / malice'; renders ἡγῆ; Shimei's malice against David (esp. the cursing, v. 8).

σου
your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἣν

which

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ἔγνω)

→ participant reference

ὅς: relative pronoun, acc. fem. sg., referring to κακίαν.

ἔγνω

knows / is aware of

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · γινώσκω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist (conscience's settled knowledge)

γινώσκω: 'know'; 'which your heart knows'
— Shimei's own conscience attests his guilt.

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

καρδία

heart

Nominative

subject of ἔγνω

→ participant prominence

καρδία: 'heart / conscience'; renders בֶּלִי;
the inner self that knows its own guilt.

σου

your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἃ

what / which things

Accusative

relative pronoun (object of ἐποίησας)

→ participant reference

ὅς: relative pronoun, neut. pl.; 'the things which you did.'

ἐποίησας

you did

Aor Act Indic 2 Sg · ποιέω

verb of relative clause

→ constative aorist

ποιέω: 'do'; Shimei's deeds against David — the cursing and disloyalty (2 Sam 16:5–13).

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Δαυιδ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Δαυιδ

David

dative indirect object (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; the victim of Shimei's malice.

τῷ

the

Dative

article (in apposition to Δαυιδ)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πατρί

father

Dative

dative in apposition to Δαυιδ

→ sphere or reference

πατήρ: 'father'; 'David my father' — the wronged king.

μου

my

Genitive

genitive of relationship

→ relational specification

μου: meaning 'my'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of relationship.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀνταπέδωκεν
has repaid / requited

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀνταποδίδωμι

main verb

→ performative aorist (the requital declared)

ἀνταποδίδωμι: 'repay / requite / give back in return'; renders $\text{עָשָׂה} / \text{יָשַׁע}$; YHWH 'repays' Shimei's evil upon himself — the talionic principle as with Joab (vv. 32–33).

κύριος
the LORD

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; YHWH the true requiter, framing the execution as divine justice.

τὴν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

κακίαν
evil

Accusative

direct object of ἀνταπέδωκεν

→ object specification

κακία: 'evil'; Shimei's own wickedness, now recoiling on him.

σου
your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

εἰς
on

preposition + accusative (direction)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'on'; 'on your own head' (עַל רִאשׁוֹ), the talionic idiom (cf. vv. 32–33, 37).

κεφαλὴν
head

Accusative

accusative of direction (with εἰς)

→ object specification

κεφαλὴ: 'head'; the bloodguilt and its requital settle on Shimei himself.

σου
your

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

σου: meaning 'your'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

45 καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς Σαλωμων ηὐλογημένος καὶ ὁ θρόνος Δαυιδ ἔσται ἑτοιμος ἐνώπιον κυρίου εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα

But King Solomon is blessed, and the throne of David shall be established before the LORD forever.

Direct speech: the counter-blessing on the dynasty (antithesis to the curse)

καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς Σαλωμων ηὐλογημένος

As with Joab (v. 33), Solomon pairs the requital on the wrongdoer with a blessing on the dynasty: 'King Solomon is blessed' (perfect participle ηὐλογημένος) and 'the throne of David shall be established before the LORD forever.' The execution of Shimei thus serves the perpetuity of the Davidic throne — fulfilling David's charge (vv. 4, 9) and securing the kingdom (v. 46).

καὶ

and / but

coordinate conjunction (antithetical turn)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon, pronounced blessed.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

nominative in apposition to βασιλεὺς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; 'King Solomon.'

ηὐλογημένος

blessed

Perf Pass Part Nom Masc Sg · εὐλογέω

predicate participle (periphrastic, copula 'is' implied)

→ resultative perfect (standing in a blessed state)

εὐλογέω: 'bless'; renders בָּרַךְ; the perfect passive participle 'is blessed' (with implied copula) declares Solomon's blessed standing before YHWH — the antithesis to the cursed oath-breaker.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θρόνος

throne

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

θρόνος: 'throne'; the Davidic throne, whose perpetuity is here affirmed (cf. vv. 4, 24, 33).

Δαυιδ of David genitive of relationship (indeclinable) → participant identification Δαυιδ: indeclinable; 'the throne of David.'	ἔσται shall be Fut Mid Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί main verb (with predicate ἔτοιμος) → predictive future (dynastic assurance) εἰμί (fut.): 'be'; 'shall be established' — the future assurance of the throne's perpetuity.	ἔτοιμος established / secure Nominative predicate adjective (with ἔσται) → participant prominence ἔτοιμος: 'ready / fixed / established'; renders יָכֹן; 'the throne shall be established/secure before the LORD forever' (cf. 2 Sam 7:16).	ἐνώπιον before preposition + genitive (Hebraism: 'in the presence of') → spatial or relational framing ἐνώπιον: 'before / in the presence of'; Hebraism rendering יָכֹן; the throne is established under YHWH's gaze and guarantee.
κυρίου of the LORD Genitive genitive object of ἐνώπιον → relational specification κύριος: rendering of the Tetragrammaton יהוה; the throne stands 'before the LORD,' divinely secured.	εἰς unto / forever preposition + accusative (duration) → spatial or relational framing εἰς: in εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα ('forever', לְעוֹלָם), the duration-idiom.	τὸν the Accusative article → noun-phrase marking τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.	αἰῶνα age / forever Accusative accusative of duration (with εἰς) → object specification αἰών: 'age / eternity'; εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα ('forever') affirms the perpetuity of the Davidic dynasty (cf. v. 33).

46 καὶ ἐνετείλατο ὁ βασιλεὺς Σαλωμων τῷ Βαναια υἱῷ Ἰωδαε καὶ ἐξῆλθεν καὶ ἀνείλεν αὐτόν καὶ ἀπέθανεν καὶ ἦν ὁ βασιλεὺς Σαλωμων φρόνιμος σφόδρα καὶ σοφός καὶ Ἰουδα καὶ Ἰσραηλ πολλοὶ σφόδρα ὡς ἡ ἄμμος ἡ ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάσσης εἰς πλῆθος ἐσθίοντες καὶ πίνοντες καὶ χαίροντες καὶ Σαλωμων ἦν ἄρχων ἐν πάσαις ταῖς βασιλείαις καὶ ἦσαν προσφέροντες δῶρα καὶ ἐδούλευον τῷ Σαλωμων πάσας τὰς ἡμέρας τῆς ζωῆς αὐτοῦ καὶ Σαλωμων ἤρξατο διανοίγειν τὰ δυναστεύματα τοῦ Λιβάνου καὶ αὐτὸς ὠκοδόμησεν τὴν Θερμαι ἐν τῇ ἐρήμῳ καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἄριστον τῷ Σαλωμων τριάκοντα κόροι σεμιδάλεως καὶ ἐξήκοντα κόροι ἀλεύρου κεκοπανισμένου δέκα μόσχοι ἐκλεκτοὶ καὶ εἴκοσι βόες νομάδες καὶ ἑκατὸν πρόβατα ἐκτὸς ἐλάφων καὶ δορκάδων καὶ ὀρνίθων ἐκλεκτῶν νομάδων ὅτι ἦν ἄρχων ἐν παντὶ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπὸ Ραφι ἕως Γάζης ἐν πᾶσιν τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἦν αὐτῷ εἰρήνη ἐκ πάντων τῶν μερῶν αὐτοῦ κυκλόθεν καὶ κατῴκει Ἰουδα καὶ Ἰσραηλ πεποιθότες ἕκαστος ὑπὸ τὴν ἄμπελον αὐτοῦ καὶ ὑπὸ τὴν συκὴν αὐτοῦ ἐσθίοντες καὶ πίνοντες ἀπὸ Δαν καὶ ἕως Βηρσαβεε πάσας τὰς ἡμέρας Σαλωμων καὶ οὗτοι οἱ ἄρχοντες τοῦ Σαλωμων Ἀζαριον υἱὸς Σαδωκ τοῦ ἱερέως καὶ Ορνιου υἱὸς Ναθαν ἄρχων τῶν ἐφεστηκότων καὶ Εδραμ ἐπὶ τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ καὶ Σουβα γραμματεὺς καὶ Βασα υἱὸς Αχιθαλαμ ἀναμιμνήσκων καὶ Αβι υἱὸς Ἰωαβ ἀρχιστράτηγος καὶ Αχιρε υἱὸς Εδραϊ ἐπὶ τὰς ἄρσεις καὶ Βαναια υἱὸς Ἰωδαε ἐπὶ τῆς αὐλαρχίας καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ πλινθείου καὶ Ζαχουρ υἱὸς Ναθαν ὁ σύμβουλος καὶ ἦσαν τῷ Σαλωμων τεσσαράκοντα χιλιάδες τοκάδες ἵπποι εἰς ἄρματα καὶ δώδεκα χιλιάδες ἵππέων καὶ ἦν ἄρχων ἐν πᾶσιν τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἕως γῆς ἄλλοφύλων καὶ ἕως ὀρίων Αἰγύπτου Σαλωμων υἱὸς Δαυιδ ἐβασίλευσεν ἐπὶ Ἰσραηλ καὶ Ἰουδα ἐν Ἱερουσαλημ

And King Solomon charged Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and he went out and struck him down, and he died. And King Solomon was very prudent and wise; and Judah and Israel were very many, like the sand that is by the sea in multitude, eating and drinking and rejoicing. And Solomon was ruler over all the kingdoms, and they were bringing gifts and serving Solomon all the days of his life. And Solomon began to open up the dominions of Lebanon, and he himself built Thermai in the

wilderness. And this was the daily provision for Solomon: thirty kors of fine flour and sixty kors of milled meal, ten fatted oxen and twenty pastured oxen and a hundred sheep, besides deer and gazelles and choice fatted fowl; for he was ruler in all the region beyond the River, from Raphi to Gaza, over all the kings beyond the River. And he had peace on all sides round about; and Judah and Israel dwelt securely, each under his vine and under his fig tree, eating and drinking, from Dan even to Beersheba, all the days of Solomon. And these were Solomon's officials: Azariah son of Zadok the priest, and Orniou son of Nathan chief of the appointed officers, and Edram over his household, and Souba secretary, and Basa son of Ahithalam recorder, and Abi son of Joab commander-in-chief, and Achire son of Edrai over the levies, and Banaia son of Jehoiada over the court-administration and over the brickworks, and Zachour son of Nathan the counselor. And Solomon had forty thousand brood-mares, horses for chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen; and he was ruler over all the kings from the River even to the land of the Philistines and to the border of Egypt. Solomon son of David reigned over Israel and Judah in Jerusalem.

Narrative + LXX 'miscellany': Shimei executed, then the closing supplementary plus (46a-l)

καὶ ἐνετείλατο ὁ βασιλεὺς Σαλωμων

The base verse executes Shimei through Benaiah (the third and last of the chapter's executions), completing David's charge and the consolidation of the kingdom; the MT here adds 'and the kingdom was established in the hand of Solomon' (a refrain echoing v. 12), which in this LXX edition is replaced/expanded by the second 'MISCELLANY' (traditionally 46a-l, with the source's sub-letter markers stripped and not annotated). This long plus, absent from the MT at this point, summarizes Solomon's reign in terms the MT distributes across 1 Kings 4-5 and 9-10: his surpassing wisdom and the prosperity of Judah and Israel 'like the sand by the sea' (46a); his dominion over the kingdoms and their tribute (46b); his ventures in Lebanon and his building of Thermai/Tadmor (46c-d); his daily provisions (46e); his rule 'beyond the River from Raphi to Gaza' (46f); the proverbial peace 'each under his vine and fig tree from Dan to Beersheba' (46g); the roster of his chief officers (46h); his chariot-horses (46i); his dominion 'from the River to the border of Egypt' (46k); and the closing regnal summary 'Solomon son of David reigned over Israel and Judah in Jerusalem' (46l).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐνετείλατο

charged / commanded

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · ἐντέλλομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἐντέλλομαι: 'command / charge'; Solomon orders Benaiah to execute Shimei (the verb framing the chapter, cf. vv. 1, 43).

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

*nominative in apposition to βασιλεὺς
(indeclinable)*

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; 'King Solomon.'

τῷ

to

Dative

article (with Βαnaiα)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Βαnaiα

Benaiah

Dative

dative indirect object (recipient of the charge)

→ sphere or reference

Βαnaiας: here the dative form Βαnaiα; the chief executioner who has already dispatched Adonijah (v. 25) and Joab (v. 34).

υἱῷ

son

Dative

dative in apposition to Βαnaiα

→ sphere or reference

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jehoiada.'

Ιωδαε

of Jehoiada

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωδαε: indeclinable; Benaiah's father.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐξῆλθεν

went out

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἐξέρχομαι

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἐξέρχομαι: 'go out'; Benaiah went out to carry out the execution.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀνεῖλεν

struck down / killed

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀναιρέω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the execution)

ἀναιρέω: 'kill / do away with'; Benaiah executes Shimei, the third and last rival removed (cf. vv. 25, 34).

αὐτόν

him

Accusative

direct object (Shimei)

→ participant reference

αὐτόν: meaning 'him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as direct object (Shimei).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἀπέθανεν

he died

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · ἀποθνήσκω

main verb

→ constative aorist

ἀποθνήσκω: 'die'; Shimei's death completes the purges; the MT here adds 'and the kingdom was established in Solomon's hand' (cf. v. 12), expanded in the LXX by the miscellany that follows.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46a)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἦν

was

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

copula

→ imperfect (characterizing state)

εἰμί: 'be'; introduces the summary of Solomon's wisdom and the realm's prosperity.

ὁ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεὺς

king

Nominative

subject

→ participant prominence

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; Solomon.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

nominative in apposition to βασιλεὺς (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; 'King Solomon.'

φρόνιμος

prudent / wise

Nominative

predicate adjective (with ἦν)

→ participant prominence

φρόνιμος: 'prudent / sensible / wise'; Solomon's renowned discernment (cf. miscellany 35a–b).

σφόδρα

exceedingly

adverb of degree

→ clausal contribution

σφόδρα: 'exceedingly'; intensifies 'prudent.'

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

σοφός

wise

Nominative

predicate adjective (with ἦν)

→ participant prominence

σοφός: 'wise'; paired with φρόνιμος to sum up Solomon's wisdom.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Ιουδα

Judah

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιουδα: indeclinable; the southern tribe/kingdom, here flourishing under Solomon.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Ισραηλ

Israel

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ισραηλ: indeclinable; the northern tribes, paired with Judah for the whole nation.

πολλοί

many / numerous

Nominative

predicate adjective (with implied 'were')

→ participant prominence

πολύς: 'many'; the people were numerous — a sign of covenant blessing (cf. Gen 22:17).

σφόδρα

exceedingly

adverb of degree

→ clausal contribution

σφόδρα: 'exceedingly'; 'very many!'

ὥς

like / as

comparative particle

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὥς: 'like'; introduces the simile of the sand (cf. 35a).

ἡ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄμμος

sand

Nominative

subject of the simile

→ participant prominence

ἄμμος: 'sand'; 'like the sand by the sea' — the proverbial image of countless multitude (Gen 22:17; 1 Kings 4:20).

ἡ

the (one)

Nominative

article (attributive, 'the [sand] on the sea')

→ noun-phrase marking

ἡ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐπὶ

on / by

preposition + genitive (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπὶ + genitive: 'on / at'; 'the sand on the seashore.'

τῆς

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

θαλάσσης

sea

Genitive

genitive object of ἐπί

→ relational specification

θάλασσα: 'sea'; the seashore whose sand images the multitude.

εἰς

in / for

preposition + accusative (respect: 'in multitude')

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'as to / in respect of'; εἰς πλῆθος ('in multitude / abundance').

πλῆθος

multitude / abundance

Accusative

accusative of respect (with εἰς)

→ object specification

πλῆθος: 'multitude / great number'; 'in multitude' = exceedingly numerous.

ἐσθίοντες

eating

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · ἐσθίω

circumstantial participle (describing the people's state)

→ customary present (ongoing well-being)

ἐσθίω: 'eat'; the participle-triad 'eating and drinking and rejoicing' images national prosperity and security (cf. 1 Kings 4:20).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

πίνοντες

drinking

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · πίνω

circumstantial participle

→ customary present

πίνω: 'drink'; second member of the prosperity-triad.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

χαίροντες

rejoicing

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · χαίρω

circumstantial participle

→ customary present

χαίρω: 'rejoice / be glad'; third member of the triad — the joy of the golden age of Solomon's reign.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46b)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the imperial ruler.

ἦν

was

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

copula (with predicate ἄρχων)

→ imperfect (settled state of dominion)

εἰμί: 'be'; 'Solomon was ruler' over the surrounding kingdoms (cf. 1 Kings 5:1).

ἄρχων

ruler

Nominative

predicate nominative (with ἦν)

→ participant prominence

ἄρχων: 'ruler / overlord'; renders לַמֶּלֶךְ; Solomon's suzerainty over the kingdoms (cf. 46f, 46k; 1 Kings 5:1).

ἐν

over / among

preposition + dative (sphere of rule)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: 'among / over'; the sphere of Solomon's dominion.

πάσαις

all

Dative

adjective (modifying βασιλείαις)

→ sphere or reference

παῖς: 'all'; 'all the kingdoms.'

ταῖς

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

ταῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλείαις

kingdoms

Dative

dative object of ἐν

→ sphere or reference

βασιλεία: 'kingdom'; the subject-kingdoms over which Solomon held sway.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἦσαν

they were

Impf Act Indic 3 Pl · εἰμί

auxiliary (periphrastic with προσφέροντες)

→ periphrastic imperfect (customary tribute)

εἰμί: imperfect auxiliary; with προσφέροντες forms a periphrastic imperfect 'they were bringing' — the subject-kingdoms' ongoing tribute.

προσφέροντες

bringing / offering

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · προσφέρω

participle (with ἦσαν, periphrastic imperfect)

→ customary present (habitual tribute)

προσφέρω: 'bring / offer / present'; the vassals 'were bringing gifts' (tribute) to Solomon (cf. 1 Kings 5:1; 10:25).

δῶρα

gifts / tribute

Accusative

direct object of προσφέροντες

→ object specification

δῶρον: 'gift / tribute / present'; renders הַתְּרוּמָה; the tribute of subject peoples.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐδούλευον

served / were subject

Impf Act Indic 3 Pl · δουλεύω

main verb

→ customary imperfect (ongoing subjection)

δουλεύω: 'serve / be subject to'; renders תַּבַּל; the kingdoms 'served' Solomon as vassals throughout his reign.

τῷ

to

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

dative object of ἐδούλεον (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the overlord served by the vassals.

πάσας

all

Accusative

adjective (modifying ἡμέρας)

→ object specification

παῖς: 'all'; 'all the days.'

τὰς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέρας

days

Accusative

accusative of extent of time

→ object specification

ἡμέρα: 'day'; 'all the days of his life' — throughout Solomon's reign.

τῆς

of the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ζωῆς

life

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with ἡμέρας)

→ relational specification

ζωή: 'life'; 'the days of his life' = his whole reign.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46c)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable.

ἤρξατο

began

Aor Mid Indic 3 Sg · ἄρχω

main verb (with complementary infinitive)

→ ingressive aorist (the undertaking begun)

ἄρχω (mid. ἄρχομαι): 'begin'; with διανοίγειν, 'began to open up' — Solomon's exploitation of Lebanon's resources.

διανοίγειν

to open up / develop

Pres Act Inf · διανοίγω

complementary infinitive (with ἤρξατο)

→ verbal action or state

διανοίγω: 'open thoroughly / open up'; here of opening up/developing the 'dominions' (resources, strongholds) of Lebanon — its timber and territory (cf. 1 Kings 5:6).

τὰ

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

δυναστεύματα

dominions / strongholds

Accusative

direct object of διανοίγειν

→ object specification

δυνάστευμα: 'dominion / domain / stronghold'; the controlled territories/resources of Lebanon Solomon began to exploit.

τοῦ

of

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Λιβάνου

of Lebanon

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with δυναστεύματα)

→ relational specification

Λιβάνος: 'Lebanon'; renders לְבָנוֹן; the mountain region famed for cedar, source of Solomon's building timber (1 Kings 5:6).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46d)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

αὐτός

he himself

Nominative

subject (intensive pronoun)

→ participant reference

αὐτός; intensive 'he himself' — emphasizing Solomon's own building activity.

ὠκοδόμησεν

built

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · οἰκοδομέω

main verb

→ constative aorist

οἰκοδομέω: 'build'; Solomon built a desert city (cf. Tadmor/Palmyra, 1 Kings 9:18; 2 Chr 8:4).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article (governing indeclinable place-name)

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Θερμαί

Thermai (Tadmor)

direct object of ὠκοδόμησεν (indeclinable place-name)

→ participant identification

Θερμαί: indeclinable place-name; the desert city Solomon built — corresponding to Tadmor/Tamar (תַּדְמֹר/תַּמָּר) of 1 Kings 9:18 (the LXX form perhaps influenced by θερμός, 'hot,' of the desert).

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

τῇ

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῇ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐρήμῳ

wilderness / desert

Dative

dative of place (with ἐν)

→ sphere or reference

ἐρημος: 'wilderness / desert'; renders מִדְבָּר; the desert location of the city Solomon built (1 Kings 9:18).

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46e)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

τοῦτο

this

Nominative

demonstrative pronoun (subject of verbless clause)

→ participant reference

οὗτος: 'this'; 'this was the daily provision'
— introduces the catalogue of Solomon's table-supply (cf. 1 Kings 4:22–23).

τὸ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄριστον

meal / provision

Nominative

predicate nominative (with τοῦτο)

→ participant prominence

ἄριστον: 'meal / breakfast / provision';
here the daily food-allotment of Solomon's court (cf. 1 Kings 4:22).

τῷ

for

Dative

article (governing indeclinable Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

for Solomon

dative of advantage (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; the provision was 'for Solomon' (his court).

τριάκοντα

thirty

numeral (with κόροι)

→ measure or count

τριάκοντα: 'thirty'; thirty kors of fine flour (cf. 1 Kings 4:22).

κόροι

kors / measures

Nominative

subject (quantity of flour)

→ participant prominence

κόρος: 'kor' (a large dry measure, c. 220 liters); renders כֶּרֶךְ; the unit of grain-supply.

σεμιδάλεως

of fine flour

Genitive

genitive of content (with κόροι)

→ relational specification

σεμίδαλις: 'fine flour / semolina'; renders סֶמֶלָה; the finest wheat flour.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἑξήκοντα

sixty

numeral (with κόροι)

→ measure or count

ἑξήκοντα: 'sixty'; sixty kors of meal (cf. 1 Kings 4:22).

κόροι

kors / measures

Nominative

subject (quantity of meal)

→ participant prominence

κόρος: 'kor'; the measure of ordinary meal.

ἀλεύρου

of meal / flour

Genitive

genitive of content (with κόροι)

→ relational specification

ἄλευρον: 'meal / ground flour'; renders אֲמֹנִית; ordinary flour, as distinct from fine סֶמֶלָה.

κεκοπανισμένου

milled / pounded

Perf Pass Part Gen Neut Sg · κοπανίζω

attributive participle (modifying ἀλεύρου)

→ resultative perfect (processed state)

κοπανίζω: 'pound / crush / mill'; the perfect passive participle 'pounded/milled meal' specifies processed flour.

δέκα

ten

numeral (with μόσχοι)

→ measure or count

δέκα: 'ten'; ten fatted oxen (cf. 1 Kings 4:23).

μόσχοι

calves / oxen

Nominative

subject (quantity of cattle)

→ participant prominence

μόσχος: 'calf / young ox'; renders רָקִי; the stall-fed cattle of the royal table.

ἐκλεκτοὶ

choice / fatted

Nominative

attributive adjective (modifying μόσχοι)

→ participant prominence

ἐκλεκτός: 'chosen / choice / select'; renders נִרְבֵּי ('fatted'); the prime stall-fed oxen.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

εἴκοσι

twenty

numeral (with βόες)

→ measure or count

εἴκοσι: 'twenty'; twenty pasture-fed oxen (cf. 1 Kings 4:23).

βόες

oxen / cattle

Nominative

subject (quantity of cattle)

→ participant prominence

βοῦς: 'ox / cow'; renders רָקִי; the pasture-fed cattle.

νομάδες

pastured / grazing

Nominative

attributive adjective (modifying βόες)

→ participant prominence

νομάς: 'grazing / pastured / roaming'; renders יָגַל ('pasture'); free-range oxen, as distinct from stall-fed.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐκατὸν

a hundred

numeral (with πρόβατα)

→ measure or count

ἐκατόν: 'hundred'; a hundred sheep (cf. 1 Kings 4:23).

πρόβατα

sheep

Nominative

subject (quantity of flock)

→ participant prominence

πρόβατον: 'sheep'; renders יֶמֶשׁ; the daily allotment of sheep.

ἐκτὸς

besides / apart from

preposition + genitive (exception)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐκτός + genitive: 'besides / apart from / except'; 'besides' the game-animals that follow.

ἐλάφων

deer / stags

Genitive

genitive object of ἐκτός

→ relational specification

ἐλαφος: 'deer / stag'; renders לַיָּא; game animals supplementing the royal table (1 Kings 4:23).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

δορκάδων

gazelles / roe-deer

Genitive

genitive object of ἐκτός

→ relational specification

δορκάς: 'gazelle / roe-deer'; renders יָבֶצֶד; another game animal of the royal provision.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὀρνίθων

fowl / birds

Genitive

genitive object of ἐκτός

→ relational specification

ὄρνις: 'bird / fowl'; renders בְּרִיבְרִים (fattened fowl); poultry for the royal table (1 Kings 4:23).

ἐκλεκτῶν

choice / select

Genitive

attributive adjective (modifying ὀρνίθων)

→ relational specification

ἐκλεκτός: 'choice / select'; the finest fowl.

νομάδων

free-range / pastured

Genitive

attributive adjective (modifying ὀρνίθων)

→ relational specification

νομάς: 'grazing / free-range'; here of free-ranging or fattened fowl, completing the inventory of provisions.

ὅτι

for / because

causal conjunction (begins miscellany 46f)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

ὅτι: 'because'; grounds the lavish provision in the extent of Solomon's dominion.

ἦν

he was

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

copula (with predicate ἄρχων)

→ imperfect (settled state of rule)

εἰμί: 'be'; 'he was ruler' over the Transeuphrates region.

ἄρχων

ruler

Nominative

predicate nominative (with ἦν)

→ participant prominence

ἄρχων: 'ruler'; Solomon's dominion over the lands west of the Euphrates (cf. 1 Kings 5:4).

ἐν

in / over

preposition + dative (sphere of rule)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (sphere of rule).

παντὶ

all

Dative

substantival adjective (with ἐν: 'in all [the region]')

→ sphere or reference

πᾶς: 'all'; 'in all (the region) beyond the River.'

πέραν

beyond / across

preposition/adverb + genitive (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

πέραν + genitive: 'beyond / across'; 'beyond the River' (רַבְרָב הַנָּהָר), the Transeuphrates province-name.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ποταμοῦ

river

Genitive

genitive object of πέραν

→ relational specification

ποταμός: 'river'; renders רַבְרָב; 'the River' = the Euphrates, the standard boundary-marker of Solomon's empire (cf. 1 Kings 5:1).

ἀπὸ

from

preposition + genitive (starting point)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀπὸ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (starting point).

Ραφι

Raphi / Tiphseh

genitive of place (indeclinable place-name, with ἀπό)

→ participant identification

Ραφι: indeclinable place-name; a northern boundary-point of the realm (corresponding to Tiphseh, רַפְזָה, on the Euphrates in 1 Kings 5:4).

ἕως

to / as far as

preposition + genitive (end point)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἕως + genitive: 'as far as'; the southern limit, Gaza.

Γάζης

of Gaza

Genitive

genitive of place (with ἕως)

→ relational specification

Γάζα: 'Gaza'; renders גַּזָּה; declined (gen. Γάζης); the southwestern limit of Solomon's dominion (cf. 1 Kings 5:4).

ἐν

over / among

preposition + dative (sphere of rule)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'over'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (sphere of rule).

πᾶσιν

all

Dative

adjective (modifying βασιλεῦσιν)

→ sphere or reference

πᾶς: 'all'; 'all the kings.'

τοῖς

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεῦσιν

kings

Dative

dative object of ἐν

→ sphere or reference

βασιλεὺς: 'king'; the vassal kings of the Transeuphrates region under Solomon's rule.

πέραν

beyond

preposition + genitive (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

πέραν + genitive: 'beyond'; repeated to define the province 'beyond the River.'

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ποταμοῦ

river

Genitive

genitive object of πέραν

→ relational specification

ποταμός: 'river'; the Euphrates, boundary of the realm.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46g)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἦν

there was / he had

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

main verb (with dative of possession)

→ imperfect (state of peace)

εἰμί: 'be'; with the dative αὐτῷ, 'he had peace' on every side (cf. 1 Kings 5:4).

αὐτῷ

to him / he had

Dative

dative of possession

→ participant reference or interest

αὐτῷ: meaning 'to him'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as dative of possession.

εἰρήνη

peace

Nominative

subject of ἦν

→ participant prominence

εἰρήνη: 'peace'; renders שָׁלוֹם; the rest from enemies that characterized Solomon's reign (his name evokes shalom; cf. 1 Kings 5:4).

ἐκ

from / on

preposition + genitive (source/extent)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐκ: meaning 'from'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + genitive (source/extent).

πάντων

all

Genitive

adjective (modifying μερῶν)

→ relational specification

πᾶς: 'all'; 'from all his sides' = on every side.

τῶν

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῶν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

μερῶν

sides / parts

Genitive

genitive object of ἐκ

→ relational specification

μέρος: 'part / side / region'; 'from all his sides' = on every border.

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

κυκλόθεν

round about

adverb of place

→ clausal contribution

κυκλόθεν: 'round about / all around'; renders כָּל־צָדָה; peace on every side (cf. 1 Kings 5:4).

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

κατώκει
dwelt / lived

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · κατοικέω

main verb

→ customary imperfect (settled secure dwelling)

κατοικέω: 'dwell / inhabit'; renders יָשַׁב;
Judah and Israel dwelt securely throughout Solomon's reign.

Ιουδα
Judah

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιουδα: indeclinable; the southern kingdom.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Ισραηλ
Israel

subject (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ισραηλ: indeclinable; the northern tribes; together 'Judah and Israel' = the whole nation.

πεποιθότες
in security / trusting

Perf Act Part Nom Masc Pl · πείθω

circumstantial participle (manner: 'securely')

→ resultative perfect (state of confident security)

πείθω (perf. πέποιθα, 'trust / be confident'): the perfect participle 'being confident/secure' renders חֹזְקִים ('in safety'); the people dwelt without fear.

ἕκαστος
each one

Nominative

distributive subject ('each man')

→ participant prominence

ἕκαστος: 'each / every one'; distributive — every individual dwelt secure.

ὑπὸ
under

preposition + accusative (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

ὑπὸ + accusative: 'under'; 'under his vine' — the idiom of secure prosperity.

τὴν
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄμπελον
vine

Accusative

accusative object of ὑπό

→ object specification

ἄμπελος: 'vine / grapevine'; renders נֶזֶל;
'each under his own vine and fig tree' is the proverbial image of peace and plenty (cf. 1 Kings 4:25; Mic 4:4).

αὐτοῦ
his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ὑπὸ

under

preposition + accusative (position)

→ spatial or relational framing

ὑπὸ: meaning 'under'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + accusative (position).

τὴν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὴν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

συκῆν

fig tree

Accusative

accusative object of ὑπό

→ object specification

συκῆ: 'fig tree'; renders הַיָּצִיט; paired with the vine in the peace-and-plenty idiom (1 Kings 4:25; Mic 4:4).

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

ἐσθίοντες

eating

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · ἐσθίω

circumstantial participle

→ customary present

ἐσθίω: 'eat'; renews the prosperity-image (cf. 46a).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

πίνοντες

drinking

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Pl · πίνω

circumstantial participle

→ customary present

πίνω: 'drink'; the secure enjoyment of plenty.

ἀπὸ

from

preposition + genitive (starting point of merism)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀπό: 'from'; ἀπὸ Δαν ... ἕως Βηρσαβее ('from Dan to Beersheba'), the merism for the whole land.

Δαν

Dan

genitive of place (indeclinable, with ἀπό)

→ participant identification

Δαν: indeclinable; the northernmost city — one pole of the 'Dan to Beersheba' merism for all Israel.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἕως

to / as far as

preposition + genitive (end point of merism)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἕως + genitive: 'as far as'; the southern pole, Beersheba.

Βηρσαβее

Beersheba

genitive of place (indeclinable, with ἕως)

→ participant identification

Βηρσαβее: indeclinable; here the southernmost town Beersheba (בְּרַשָּׁב) — the other pole of the 'Dan to Beersheba' merism (note: the same spelling as Bathsheba's name, vv. 13–19, distinguished by context).

πάσας

all

Accusative

adjective (modifying ἡμέρας)

→ object specification

παῖς: 'all'; 'all the days of Solomon.'

τὰς

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἡμέρας

days

Accusative

accusative of extent of time

→ object specification

ἡμέρα: 'day'; 'all the days of Solomon' = throughout his peaceful reign.

Σαλωμων

of Solomon

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; here genitive 'of Solomon' — the era of peace bears his name.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46h)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

οὗτοι

these

Nominative

demonstrative pronoun (subject)

→ participant reference

οὗτος: 'these'; 'these are Solomon's officials' — introduces the cabinet-roster (cf. 1 Kings 4:2–6).

οἱ

the

Nominative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

οἱ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄρχοντες

officials / chiefs

Nominative

predicate nominative (with οὗτοι)

→ participant prominence

ἄρχων: 'official / chief / minister'; renders ἄρχ; Solomon's chief officers of state.

τοῦ

of

Genitive

article (governing indeclinable Σαλωμων)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

of Solomon

genitive of relationship (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; 'the officials of Solomon.'

Αζαριον

Azariah

Nominative

subject (first official named)

→ participant prominence

Αζαριᾱς: transliteration of אֶזְרִיָּא (Azariah); here in the form Αζαριον; the priest, Zadok's son, an official of Solomon (cf. 1 Kings 4:2).

υἱός

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Αζαριον

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Zadok.'

Σαδωκ

of Zadok

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Σαδωκ: indeclinable; the chief priest (v. 35), Azariah's father.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article (with ἱερέως)

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἱερέως

priest

Genitive

genitive in apposition to Σαδωκ

→ relational specification

ἱερεύς: 'priest'; Zadok 'the priest' (cf. v. 35).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Ορνιου

Orniou

subject (indeclinable proper noun, frozen form)

→ participant identification

Ορνιου: a transliterated personal name (corresponding to a son of Nathan among Solomon's officials, cf. 1 Kings 4:5); treated as indeclinable here.

υἱός

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Ορνιου

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Nathan.'

Ναθαν

of Nathan

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ναθαν: transliteration of נָתָן (Nathan); indeclinable; the father (cf. the prophet/official Nathan).

ἄρχων

chief / officer

Nominative

nominative in apposition (his office)

→ participant prominence

ἄρχων: 'chief / officer'; 'chief of the appointed officers' — head of the district prefects (cf. 1 Kings 4:5).

τῶν

of the

Genitive

article (with substantival participle)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῶν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἐφεστηκότων

those appointed / officers in charge

Perf Act Part Gen Masc Pl · ἐφίστημι

substantival participle (genitive, 'those set in charge')

→ resultative perfect (standing appointment)

ἐφίστημι: 'set over / appoint / stand in charge'; the perfect participle 'those set in charge' = the district officers Orniou headed.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Εδραμ

Edram

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Εδραμ: transliterated personal name; the official 'over the household' (corresponding to Ahishar, the palace-steward, 1 Kings 4:6); indeclinable.

ἐπὶ

over

preposition + accusative (oversight)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + accusative: 'over'; 'over his household.'

τὸν

the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὸν: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

οἶκον

household / palace

Accusative

accusative object of ἐπί

→ object specification

οἶκος: 'house / household'; the royal palace, of which Edram was steward (cf. 1 Kings 4:6).

αὐτοῦ

his

Genitive

genitive of possession

→ relational specification

αὐτοῦ: meaning 'his'; pronoun marking person, possession, or reference within the clause; here it functions as genitive of possession.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Σουβα

Souba

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Σουβα: transliterated personal name; the royal 'secretary' (corresponding to the scribes Elihoreph and Ahijah, 1 Kings 4:3); indeclinable.

γραμματεὺς

secretary / scribe

Nominative

nominative in apposition (his office)

→ participant prominence

γραμματεὺς: 'scribe / secretary'; renders 𐤒𐤕𐤔; the royal secretary of state (cf. 1 Kings 4:3).

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καί: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Βασα

Basa

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Βασα: transliterated personal name; the 'recorder' (corresponding to Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud, 1 Kings 4:3); indeclinable.

υἱὸς

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Βασα

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Ahithalam.'

Αχιθαλαμ

of Ahithalam

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Αχιθαλαμ: transliterated patronymic (corresponding to Ahilud, 1 Kings 4:3); indeclinable; Basa's father.

ἀναμνησκων

recorder / remembrancer

Pres Act Part Nom Masc Sg · ἀναμνήσκω

substantival participle (his office: 'the one recording')

→ customary present

ἀναμνήσκω: 'remind / call to mind / record'; the participle 'the recorder / remembrancer' renders 𐤒𐤕𐤔𐤕, the royal chancellor who kept the chronicles (cf. 1 Kings 4:3).

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Αβι
Abi

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Αβι: transliterated personal name; the commander-in-chief (corresponding to Benaiah/the army chief); indeclinable; here 'son of Joab.'

υἱός
son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Αβι

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Joab.'

Ιωαβ
of Joab

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωαβ: indeclinable; here a patronymic in the officer-list (distinct from the executed commander Joab of vv. 5, 28–34).

ἀρχιστράτηγος
commander-in-chief

Nominative

nominative in apposition (his office)

→ participant prominence

ἀρχιστράτηγος: 'commander-in-chief'; renders אֲרִיָּהוּ; the head of the army (the office Benaiah held, v. 35).

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Αχιρε
Achire

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Αχιρε: transliterated personal name; the officer 'over the levies' (corresponding to Adoniram over the forced labor, 1 Kings 4:6); indeclinable.

υἱός
son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Αχιρε

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Edrai.'

Εδραϊ
of Edrai

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Εδραϊ: transliterated patronymic; Achire's father; indeclinable.

ἐπὶ
over

preposition + accusative (oversight)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπὶ + accusative: 'over'; 'over the levies/burdens.'

τὰς
the

Accusative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τὰς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ἄρσεις
levies / burdens

Accusative

accusative object of ἐπὶ

→ object specification

ἄρσεις: 'a lifting / burden / levy'; here the forced-labor levies (corvée), over which Achire was set (cf. Adoniram, 1 Kings 4:6; 5:14).

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Βαναία

Banaia / Benaiah

Nominative

subject (an official named)

→ participant prominence

Βαναίας: here the form Βαναία as subject; an official set over the court-administration (a name shared with the executioner Benaiah, but here in the cabinet-list).

υἱὸς

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Βαναία

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Jehoiada.'

Ιωδαε

of Jehoiada

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιωδαε: indeclinable; the father in the patronymic.

ἐπὶ
over

preposition + genitive (oversight)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + genitive: 'over'; 'over the court-administration.'

τῆς
the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τῆς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

αὐλαρχίας

court-administration

Genitive

genitive object of ἐπί

→ relational specification

αὐλαρχία: 'rule of the court / court-administration'; the office of chief court-official.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἐπὶ
over

preposition + genitive (oversight)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + genitive: 'over'; a second responsibility, the brickworks.

τοῦ
the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

πλινθείου

brickworks / brickyard

Genitive

genitive object of ἐπί

→ relational specification

πλινθεῖον: 'brickyard / brick-kiln'; the brick-making works, also under this official's charge.

καὶ
and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Ζαχουρ

Zachour

subject (indeclinable proper noun)

→ participant identification

Ζαχουρ: transliterated personal name; the royal 'counselor'; indeclinable; here 'son of Nathan.'

υἱὸς

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Ζαχουρ

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; patronymic 'son of Nathan.'

Ναθαν

of Nathan

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ναθαν: indeclinable; the father (cf. 1 Kings 4:5, 'Zabud son of Nathan, the king's friend').

ὁ

the

Nominative

article (with σύμβουλος)

→ noun-phrase marking

ὁ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

σύμβουλος

counselor

Nominative

nominative in apposition (his office)

→ participant prominence

σύμβουλος: 'counselor / adviser'; the king's confidential adviser (cf. 'the king's friend,' 1 Kings 4:5), closing the officer-list.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46i)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἦσαν

there were / he had

Impf Act Indic 3 Pl · εἰμί

main verb (with dative of possession)

→ imperfect (state of possession)

εἰμί: 'be'; with the dative τῷ Σαλωμων, 'Solomon had' — introduces his cavalry-force (cf. 1 Kings 4:26; 10:26).

τῷ

to / for

Dative

article (dative of possession)

→ noun-phrase marking

τῷ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

dative of possession (indeclinable, case via article)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; 'Solomon had' the horses.

τεσσαράκοντα

forty

numeral (with χιλιάδες)

→ measure or count

τεσσαράκοντα: 'forty'; forty thousand (cf. 1 Kings 4:26; the parallel at 10:26 has variant figures).

χιλιάδες

thousands

Nominative

subject (number of horses)

→ participant prominence

χιλιάς: 'thousand'; forty thousand brood-mares/horses for the chariotry.

τοκάδες

brood-mares / breeding

Nominative

attributive (modifying ἵπποι: 'breeding horses')

→ participant prominence

τοκάς: 'breeding / brood (female)'; here 'brood-mares' — breeding stock for the chariot-horses.

ἵπποι

horses

Nominative

subject (in apposition to *χιλιάδες*)

→ participant prominence

ἵππος: 'horse'; renders *דוֹד*; the chariot-horses of Solomon's stables (1 Kings 4:26).

εἰς

for

preposition + accusative (purpose)

→ spatial or relational framing

εἰς: 'for'; 'horses for chariots.'

ἄρματα

chariots

Accusative

accusative of purpose (with *εἰς*)

→ object specification

ἄρμα: 'chariot'; renders *מֶרְכָבָה* / *מֶרְכָב*; the war- and parade-chariots the horses drew.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

δώδεκα

twelve

numeral (with *χιλιάδες*)

→ clausal contribution

δώδεκα: 'twelve'; twelve thousand horsemen (cf. 1 Kings 4:26; 10:26).

χιλιάδες

thousands

Nominative

subject (number of horsemen)

→ participant prominence

χιλιάς: 'thousand'; twelve thousand cavalry.

ἱππέων

horsemen / cavalry

Genitive

genitive of content (with *χιλιάδες*)

→ relational specification

ἱππεύς: 'horseman / cavalryman'; renders *שָׂרָף*; Solomon's mounted troops.

καὶ

and

narrative conjunction (begins miscellany 46k)

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἦν

he was

Impf Act Indic 3 Sg · εἰμί

copula (with predicate *ἄρχων*)

→ imperfect (settled state of rule)

εἰμί: 'be'; 'he was ruler' over the kings — restating Solomon's dominion (cf. 46b, 46f).

ἄρχων

ruler

Nominative

predicate nominative (with *ἦν*)

→ participant prominence

ἄρχων: 'ruler'; Solomon's suzerainty over all neighboring kings (cf. 1 Kings 5:1).

ἐν

over / among

preposition + dative (sphere of rule)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'over'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (sphere of rule).

πᾶσιν

all

Dative

adjective (modifying *βασιλεῦσιν*)

→ sphere or reference

πᾶς: 'all'; 'all the kings.'

τοῖς

the

Dative

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῖς: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

βασιλεῦσιν

kings

Dative

dative object of *ἐν*

→ sphere or reference

βασιλεύς: 'king'; the subject kings under Solomon's dominion.

ἀπὸ

from

preposition + genitive (starting point)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἀπό: 'from'; ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ('from the River') — the extent of the realm.

τοῦ

the

Genitive

article

→ noun-phrase marking

τοῦ: Greek article marking definiteness and the role of the accompanying noun phrase.

ποταμοῦ

river

Genitive

genitive object of ἀπό

→ relational specification

ποταμός: 'river'; 'the River' = the Euphrates, the realm's far boundary (cf. 1 Kings 5:1).

καὶ

and / even

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἕως

to / as far as

preposition + genitive (end point)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἕως + genitive: 'as far as'; the realm extended to Philistia and Egypt's border.

γῆς

land

Genitive

genitive of place (with ἕως)

→ relational specification

γῆ: 'land'; 'the land of the Philistines' — the western reach of the realm.

ἀλλοφύλων

of the Philistines / foreigners

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with γῆς)

→ relational specification

ἀλλόφυλος: 'foreigner / of another tribe'; the LXX's standard term for the Philistines (פְּלִשְׁתִּים); 'the land of the Philistines' marks the realm's western edge.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

ἕως

to / as far as

preposition + genitive (end point)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἕως + genitive: 'as far as'; to the border of Egypt.

ὁρίων

borders / territory

Genitive

genitive of place (with ἕως)

→ relational specification

ὄριον: 'boundary / border / territory'; renders גְּבוּל; 'the borders of Egypt' — the southwestern limit of Solomon's empire (cf. 1 Kings 5:1).

Αἰγύπτου

of Egypt

Genitive

genitive of relationship (with ὁρίων)

→ relational specification

Αἴγυπτος: 'Egypt'; renders מִצְרַיִם; the realm reached to Egypt's frontier.

Σαλωμων

Solomon

subject (indeclinable; begins miscellany 46l, the closing summary)

→ participant identification

Σαλωμων: indeclinable; subject of the closing regnal summary.

υἱός

son

Nominative

nominative in apposition to Σαλωμων

→ participant prominence

υἱός: 'son'; 'Solomon son of David' — the dynastic title closing the chapter.

Δαυιδ

of David

genitive of relationship (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Δαυιδ: indeclinable; 'son of David' — sealing the dynastic succession that the whole chapter has secured.

ἐβασίλευσεν

reigned

Aor Act Indic 3 Sg · βασιλεύω

main verb

→ constative aorist (the reign summed up)

βασιλεύω: 'be king / reign'; renders ἡβ; the summary verb framing Solomon's whole reign over the united kingdom.

ἐπὶ

over

preposition + accusative (rule over)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐπί + accusative: 'over'; 'reigned over Israel and Judah.'

Ισραηλ

Israel

accusative object of ἐπί (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ισραηλ: indeclinable; the northern tribes.

καὶ

and

coordinate conjunction

→ discourse linkage or contrast

καὶ: meaning 'and'; conjunction or particle linking this unit with the surrounding discourse.

Ιουδα

Judah

accusative object of ἐπί (indeclinable)

→ participant identification

Ιουδα: indeclinable; the southern kingdom; 'Israel and Judah' = the whole united realm.

ἐν

in

preposition + dative (locative)

→ spatial or relational framing

ἐν: meaning 'in'; here it marks the relation signaled by preposition + dative (locative).

Ιερουσαλημ

Jerusalem

dative of place (indeclinable, with ἐν)

→ participant identification

Ιερουσαλημ: indeclinable; the capital — the final word of the chapter, sealing Solomon's established reign over the united kingdom from Jerusalem.

On the labels. Parsing gives Tense·Voice·Mood·Person·Number (+ Case·Number·Gender for participles) and lemma. The *syntactic-function* and **semantic-force** tiers follow standard intermediate-grammar categories (e.g. Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics*); both involve interpretive judgment, and the majority reading has been chosen where opinions differ. Lexical notes condense commonly cited data (etymology, sense range, synonym contrasts, NT frequency, OT/LXX echoes) and are no substitute for a lexicon.

On the discourse tier. Discourse structure operates above the word, so it is shown at the clause/verse level (the connective, the relation it signals, and the role of the clause) and summarized in the chapter outline. Relation labels, any proposed chiasm, and the paragraph divisions reflect a common reading of the argument; other discourse analyses segment and label some relations differently.